2 Corinthians

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License, which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at http://unfoldingword.org." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from http://unfoldingword.org must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing **1**
translationNotes **12**
Introduction to 2 Corinthians 12
2 Corinthians 1 General Notes 23
2 Corinthians 1:1-2 25
2 Corinthians 1:3-4 27
2 Corinthians 1:5-7 28
2 Corinthians 1:8-10 30
2 Corinthians 1:11 32
2 Corinthians 1:12-14 33
2 Corinthians 1:15-16 35
2 Corinthians 1:17-18 36
2 Corinthians 1:19-20 37
2 Corinthians 1:21-22 39
2 Corinthians 1:23-24 40
2 Corinthians 2 General Notes 41
2 Corinthians 2:1-2 42
2 Corinthians 2:3-4 43
2 Corinthians 2:5-7 45
2 Corinthians 2:8-9 46
2 Corinthians 2:10-11 47
2 Corinthians 2:12-13 48
2 Corinthians 2:14-15 50
2 Corinthians 2:16-17 52
2 Corinthians 3 General Notes 54
2 Corinthians 3:1-3 55
2 Corinthians 3:4-6 57
2 Corinthians 3:7-8 59
2 Corinthians 3:9-11 61
2 Corinthians 3:12-13 63
2 Corinthians 3:14-16 64
2 Corinthians 3:17-18 66
2 Corinthians 4 General Notes 67
2 Corinthians 4:1-2 68
2 Corinthians 4:3-4 70
2 Corinthians 4:5-6 72
2 Corinthians 4:7-10 74
2 Corinthians 4:11-12 76
2 Corinthians 4:13-15 77
2 Corinthians 4:16-18 79
2 Corinthians 5 General Notes 81

2 Corinthians 5:1-3 82
2 Corinthians 5:4-5 84
2 Corinthians 5:6-8 86
2 Corinthians 5:9-10 87
2 Corinthians 5:11-12 88
2 Corinthians 5:13-15 90
2 Corinthians 5:16-17 92
2 Corinthians 5:18-19 93
2 Corinthians 5:20-21 95
2 Corinthians 6 General Notes 97
2 Corinthians 6:1-3 98
2 Corinthians 6:4-7 100
2 Corinthians 6:8-10 102
2 Corinthians 6:11-13 104
2 Corinthians 6:14-16 106
2 Corinthians 6:17-18 108
2 Corinthians 7 General Notes 110
2 Corinthians 7:1 111
2 Corinthians 7:2-4 112
2 Corinthians 7:5-7 114
2 Corinthians 7:8-10 116
2 Corinthians 7:11-12 118
2 Corinthians 7:13-14 120
2 Corinthians 7:15-16 122
2 Corinthians 8 General Notes 123
2 Corinthians 8:1-2 124
2 Corinthians 8:3-5 126
2 Corinthians 8:6-7 128
2 Corinthians 8:8-9 130
2 Corinthians 8:10-12 131
2 Corinthians 8:13-15 132
2 Corinthians 8:16-17 134
2 Corinthians 8:18-19 135
2 Corinthians 8:20-21 137
2 Corinthians 8:22-24 138
2 Corinthians 9 General Notes 140
2 Corinthians 9:1-2 141
2 Corinthians 9:3-5 143
2 Corinthians 9:6-7 145
2 Corinthians 9:8-9 146
2 Corinthians 9:10-11 147
2 Corinthians 9:12-15 149
2 Corinthians 10 General Notes 151

2 Corinthians 10:1-2 . . . 152
2 Corinthians 10:3-4 . . . 154
2 Corinthians 10:5-6 . . . 156
2 Corinthians 10:7-8 . . . 158
2 Corinthians 10:9-10 . . . 159
2 Corinthians 10:11-12 . . . 160
2 Corinthians 10:13-14 . . . 162
2 Corinthians 10:15-16 . . . 163
2 Corinthians 10:17-18 . . . 164
2 Corinthians 11 General Notes . . . 165
2 Corinthians 11:1-2 . . . 167
2 Corinthians 11:3-4 . . . 169
2 Corinthians 11:5-6 . . . 171
2 Corinthians 11:7-9 . . . 172
2 Corinthians 11:10-11 . . . 174
2 Corinthians 11:12-13 . . . 176
2 Corinthians 11:14-15 . . . 178
2 Corinthians 11:16-18 . . . 179
2 Corinthians 11:19-21 . . . 180
2 Corinthians 11:22-23 . . . 182
2 Corinthians 11:24-26 . . . 184
2 Corinthians 11:27-29 . . . 186
2 Corinthians 11:30-31 . . . 188
2 Corinthians 11:32-33 . . . 189
2 Corinthians 12 General Notes . . . 190
2 Corinthians 12:1-2 . . . 191
2 Corinthians 12:3-5 . . . 193
2 Corinthians 12:6-7 . . . 194
2 Corinthians 12:8-10 . . . 196
2 Corinthians 12:11-13 . . . 198
2 Corinthians 12:14-15 . . . 200
2 Corinthians 12:16-18 . . . 202
2 Corinthians 12:19 . . . 204
2 Corinthians 12:20-21 . . . 205
2 Corinthians 13 General Notes . . . 207
2 Corinthians 13:1-2 . . . 208
2 Corinthians 13:3-4 . . . 209
2 Corinthians 13:5-6 . . . 210
2 Corinthians 13:7-8 . . . 211
2 Corinthians 13:9-10 . . . 212
2 Corinthians 13:11-12 . . . 213
2 Corinthians 13:13-14 . . . 214

translationQuestions **215**
2 Corinthians 1 215
2 Corinthians 2 217
2 Corinthians 3 219
2 Corinthians 4 221
2 Corinthians 5 223
2 Corinthians 6 225
2 Corinthians 7 227
2 Corinthians 8 229
2 Corinthians 9 231
2 Corinthians 10 233
2 Corinthians 11 235
2 Corinthians 12 237
2 Corinthians 13 239
translationWords **241**
Abraham, Abram 241
accuse, accusation, accuser 242
afflict, affliction 243
Almighty 244
amen, truly 245
angel, archangel 246
angry, anger 248
apostle, apostleship 249
appoint, appointed 250
armor 251
Asia 252
astray, go astray, led astray, stray 253
authority 254
basket 255
beg, beggar 256
believe, believe in, belief 257
believer 258
bless, blessed, blessing 260
boast, boastful 262
body 263
bold, boldly, boldness 264
bread 265
brother 266
burden 267
call, calling, called, call out 268
captive, captivity 270
Translation Suggestions 271
caught up, caught up with 272

children, child . . . 273
Christ, Messiah . . . 274
church, Church . . . 276
clean, cleanse . . . 278
clothe, clothed . . . 279
comfort, comforter . . . 280
command, to command, commandment . . . 281
condemn, condemnation . . . 282
confess, confession . . . 283
confidence, confident . . . 284
confirm, confirmation . . . 285
conscience . . . 286
Corinth, Corinthians . . . 287
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor . . . 288
covenant . . . 289
create, creation, Creator . . . 291
crucify . . . 292
cut off . . . 293
Damascus . . . 294
darkness . . . 295
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh . . . 296
death, die, dead . . . 297
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive . . . 299
deliver, deliverer, deliverance . . . 300
descendant, descended from . . . 301
desert, wilderness . . . 302
disciple . . . 303
dishonor, dishonorable . . . 305
disobey, disobedient, disobedience . . . 306
divine . . . 307
earth, earthly . . . 308
encourage, encouragement . . . 309
endure, endurance . . . 310
enslave, in bondage . . . 311
everlasting, eternal, eternity . . . 312
Eve . . . 313
exalt, exaltation . . . 314
faith . . . 315
faithful, faithfulness . . . 317
false god, foreign god, god, goddess . . . 318
false prophet . . . 319
ancestor, father, forefather . . . 320
favor, favorable, favoritism . . . 321

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . 322
fellowship . . . 323
flesh . . . 324
fool, foolish, folly . . . 325
forever . . . 326
forgive, forgiveness . . . 327
sexual immorality . . . 328
forsake, forsaken, forsook . . . 329
free, freedom, liberty . . . 330
Gentile . . . 331
gift . . . 332
glorify . . . 333
glory, glorious . . . 334
God . . . 335
godly, godliness . . . 337
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father . . . 338
good, goodness . . . 340
good news, gospel . . . 342
gossip . . . 344
governor, govern, proconsul, government . . . 345
grace, gracious . . . 346
groan . . . 347
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . 348
hard, hardness, harden . . . 350
harvest . . . 351
heart . . . 352
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . 353
Hebrew . . . 354
holy, holiness . . . 355
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord . . . 356
honor, to honor . . . 358
hope . . . 359
humble, humility . . . 360
idol, idolatrous . . . 361
image of God, image . . . 362
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him . . . 363
innocent . . . 364
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . 366
jealous, jealousy . . . 367
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus . . . 368
Jew, Jewish, Jews . . . 370
joy, joyful . . . 371
Judea . . . 372

judge, judgment . . . 373
just, justice, justly . . . 375
kiss . . . 376
know, knowledge, make known . . . 377
labor, laborer . . . 378
lawless, lawlessness . . . 379
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . 380
letter, epistle . . . 382
life, live, living, alive . . . 383
light . . . 385
like, likeness . . . 386
Lord . . . 387
love . . . 388
lust . . . 390
Macedonia . . . 391
meek, meekness . . . 392
mercy, merciful . . . 393
messenger . . . 395
mighty, might . . . 396
mind . . . 397
minister, ministry . . . 398
Moses . . . 399
new covenant . . . 400
obey, obedient, obedience . . . 402
patient, patience . . . 403
Paul, Saul . . . 404
peace, peaceful . . . 406
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . 407
people of God, my people . . . 409
perfect . . . 410
perish, perishing, perishable . . . 411
persecute, persecution . . . 412
plead, pleading, plea . . . 413
pledge . . . 414
possess, possession . . . 415
power, powers . . . 416
praise . . . 417
pray, prayer . . . 418
preach . . . 419
prison, prisoner, imprison . . . 420
proclaim, proclamation . . . 421
profit, profitable . . . 422
promise . . . 423

proud, pride, prideful 424
puffed up 425
punish, punishment 426
pure, purify, purification 428
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose 429
reap, reaper 431
receive 432
reconcile, reconciliation 433
rejoice 434
repent, repentance 435
restore, restoration 436
reveal, revelation 437
reward 438
righteous, righteousness 439
sacred 440
sacrifice, offering 441
salvation 443
Satan, devil, evil one 444
save, safe 446
seal, to seal 448
seed 449
send, send out, sent 450
serpent, snake, viper 451
servant, slave, slavery 452
serve, service 454
set apart 455
shame, shameful, ashamed 456
sign, proof, reminder 457
Silas, Silvanus 459
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 460
slander, slanderer 462
son, son of 463
Son of God, the Son, Son 465
soul 467
sow, sower, plant 468
spirit, spiritual 469
stronghold, fortress, fortified 471
stumble 472
stumbling block, stone of stumbling 473
suffer, suffering 474
temple 475
tent 477
terror, terrify 478

test . . . 479
testimony, testify . . . 480
Timothy . . . 481
Titus . . . 482
tremble . . . 483
trespass . . . 484
Troas . . . 485
trouble, troubles, troubled . . . 486
true, truth, come true . . . 487
turn, turn away, turn back . . . 489
unbeliever, unbelief . . . 490
unclean . . . 491
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness . . . 492
veil . . . 493
virgin . . . 494
vision . . . 495
walk . . . 496
will of God . . . 497
wise, wisdom . . . 498
witness, eyewitness . . . 499
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture . . . 501
word of truth . . . 503
works, deeds, work, acts . . . 504
world, worldly . . . 505
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless . . . 506
written . . . 507
wrong, mistreat, hurt . . . 508
zeal, zealous . . . 509
translationAcademy . . . 510
Abstract Nouns . . . 510
Active or Passive . . . 513
Double Negatives . . . 516
Doublet . . . 519
Ellipsis . . . 521
Euphemism . . . 523
Exclamations . . . 525
Exclusive “We” . . . 528
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . 530
Go and Come . . . 532
Hendiadys . . . 534
Hyperbole . . . 536
Idiom . . . 539
Inclusive “We” . . . 541

Irony . . . 543
Litotes . . . 546
Merism . . . 548
Metaphor . . . 550
Metonymy . . . 555
Nominal Adjectives . . . 557
Parallelism . . . 559
Personification . . . 561
Rhetorical Question . . . 563
Simile . . . 566
Synecdoche . . . 569
Forms of You . . . 571
Translating Son and Father . . . 572
How to Translate Names . . . 574
Textual Variants . . . 578
Translate Unknowns . . . 581

translationNotes

Introduction to 2 Corinthians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of 2 Corinthians

1. Paul thanks God for the Corinthian Christians (1:1-11)
2. Paul explains his conduct and his ministry (1:12-7:16)
3. Paul speaks about contribution of money for the Jerusalem church (8:1-9:15)
4. Paul defends his authority as an apostle (10:1-13:10)
5. Paul gives final greetings and encouragement (13:11-14)

What is the Book of 2 Corinthians about?

In 2 Corinthians, Paul continues to write about the conflicts among the Christians in the city of Corinth. It is clear from what Paul writes in this letter that the Corinthians had obeyed the instructions he previously gave to them. In 2 Corinthians, Paul encourages them to live in a way that will please God.

Paul also writes to assure them that Jesus Christ truly did send him as an apostle to preach the Gospel. Paul thought that it was very important that the Corinthian Christians realize this, because he was apparently always being opposed by Jewish Christians who were unhappy with his message of God's grace for Gentiles, even for those who were not obeying the law of Moses.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Second Corinthians" or "Paul's second Letter to the Church in Corinth." (See: How to Translate Names)

Who wrote the Book of 2 Corinthians?

Paul of Tarsus was the author. He probably wrote from Ephesus after he lived for some time in Corinth and planted the church there. Paul had been known as "Saul" before his conversion to Christ, when he had been a persecutor of the church.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the city of Corinth like?

Corinth was a major city located in ancient Greece. Because it was near the Mediterranean Sea, many people bought and sold goods there. This caused the city to have people from many different cultures. It was known for its immorality. Its religious practices centered on Aphrodite, the goddess

of love. As part of the ceremonies honoring Aphrodite, her worshipers had sexual intercourse with temple prostitutes.

What did Paul mean by "false apostles" (11:13)?

These were Christian leaders who taught that Gentile Christians had to obey the law of Moses in order to follow Christ. It is clear that even after the leaders of the Church had met in Jerusalem to decide this question (see Acts 15), there was still much disagreement over the matter.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural "you"

In this book, the word "I" refers to Paul. Also, the word "you" is almost always plural and refers to the believers who may read this letter. There are two exceptions to this: 6:2 and 12:9. (See: Exclusive "We" and Forms of You)

How are the ideas of "holy" and "sanctify" represented in 2 Corinthians ULB?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, 2 Corinthians ULB uses the following principles:

- Most contexts primarily indicate a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULB uses "believer" or "believers." (See 1:1; 8:4; 9:1, 12; 13:13)

As translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions, they will often be helped by the choices made in the ULB.

What does Paul mean by the expression "in Christ," "in the Lord," etc.?

These kinds of expression occur in 1:19, 20; 2:12, 17; 3:14; 5:17, 19, 21; 10:17; 12:2, 19; and 13:4. Paul means in general to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. At the same time, he often intends to signal other kinds of relationships. See, for example, "A door was opened to me by the Lord" (2:12).

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of 2 Corinthians?

- "and in your love for us" (8:7). Many versions, including the ULB and UDB, have this reading. However, many other versions read, "And in our love for you." There is strong evidence that each reading is original. Translators should probably follow the reading preferred by other versions in their region.

(See: Textual Variants)

What does it mean to be a "new creation" in Christ (5:17)?

Paul's message is that God makes Christians part of a "new world" when a person to faith in Christ. This is a new world of holiness, peace, and joy that God gives. In this new world, believers have a new nature that has been given them by the Holy Spirit. Translators should try to express this idea.

List of translationAcademy Topics in 2 Corinthians

* Abstract Nouns is found in: 05:18, 07:15, 08:10, 08:22, 09:06, 10:01, 12:20

* Active or Passive is found in: 01:03, 01:08, 01:11, 02:01, 02:03, 02:05, 02:10, 02:14, 02:16, 03:01, 03:07, 03:09, 03:14, 03:17, 04:03, 04:07, 04:11, 04:13, 04:16, 05:01, 05:04, 05:09, 05:11, 05:13, 05:20, 06:01, 06:08, 06:11, 06:17, 07:02, 07:05, 07:08, 07:11, 07:13, 08:01, 08:13, 08:18, 08:22, 09:03, 09:08, 09:10, 09:12, 10:15, 10:17, 11:10, 11:12, 11:16, 11:24, 11:32, 12:11, 13:01, 13:03

* Double Negatives is found in: 01:12, 04:01, 04:16, 06:01, 06:14, 06:17, 08:13, 12:03, 13:05

* Doublet is found in: 02:16, 07:15, 08:03, 08:10

* Ellipsis is found in: 01:08, 01:12, 02:16, 03:04, 04:05, 04:16, 05:09, 07:08, 10:17, 11:10, 11:22

* Exclamations is found in: 03:09, 07:11

* Exclusive "We" is found in: 04:01, 04:07, 04:13, 06:04, 07:05, 10:11

* Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information is found in: 01:17, 01:19, 02:03, 02:08, 03:04, 03:07, 03:09, 03:12, 04:01, 04:13, 04:16, 05:11, 05:20, 06:01, 07:05, 07:08, 08:03, 08:06, 08:08, 08:10, 08:13, 08:16, 09:01, 09:10, 09:12, 11:07, 11:24, 12:14

* Go and Come is found in: 09:03

* Hendiadys is found in: 04:01, 12:01

* Hyperbole is found in: 11:27

* Idiom is found in: 01:23, 05:13, 07:02, 07:08, 10:13, 10:15, 11:22

* Inclusive "We" is found in: 01:03, 03:17, 05:20, 07:02

* Irony is found in: 03:07, 11:05, 11:07, 11:19, 12:11, 12:16

* Litotes is found in: 01:08, 02:10, 11:14, 11:30, 12:11, 13:07

* Merism is found in: 06:08

* Metaphor is found in: 01:05, 01:08, 01:21, 02:12, 02:14, 02:16, 03:01, 03:09, 03:14, 03:17, 04:01, 04:03, 04:05, 04:07, 04:11, 04:13, 04:16, 05:01, 05:04, 05:06, 05:16, 06:01, 06:04, 06:11, 06:14, 07:02, 07:11, 08:01, 08:06, 08:08, 09:06, 09:10, 09:12, 10:03, 10:05, 10:07, 10:11, 10:13, 11:01, 11:03, 11:12, 11:19, 11:27, 12:06, 12:08, 12:14, 12:19, 13:09

* Metonymy is found in: 01:12, 02:03, 03:14, 04:05, 05:11, 05:18, 09:01, 09:06, 09:10, 10:01, 10:03, 10:05, 11:16, 11:32, 12:14

* Parallelism is found in: 01:03, 10:11, 12:20

* Personification is found in: 03:04, 04:11, 08:01

* Rhetorical Question is found in: 01:17, 02:01, 02:16, 03:01, 03:07, 06:14, 10:07, 11:07, 11:10, 11:27, 12:11, 12:14, 12:16, 12:19, 13:05

* Synecdoche is found in: 01:21, 03:04, 07:05, 08:16

* Translating Son and Father is found in: 01:19

* How to Translate Names is found in: 01:01, 06:14, 09:01

List of translationWords in 2 Corinthians

* Abraham, Abram is found in: 11:22

* accuse, accusation, accuser is found in: 06:08

* afflict, affliction is found in: 01:03, 01:05, 02:03, 04:07, 04:16, 06:04, 07:02, 08:01

* Almighty is found in: 06:17

* amen, truly is found in: 01:19

* angel, archangel is found in: 11:14

* angry, anger is found in: 12:20

* apostle, apostleship is found in: 01:01, 11:05, 11:12, 12:11

* armor is found in: 06:04

* Asia is found in: 01:08

* astray, go astray, led astray, stray is found in: 11:03

* authority is found in: 10:07, 13:09

* basket is found in: 11:32

* beg, beggar is found in: 06:01, 08:03

* believe, believe in, belief is found in: 04:13

* believer is found in: 01:01, 06:14, 08:03, 09:01, 09:12, 13:13

* bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 09:03, 09:06, 09:08

* boast, boastful is found in: 05:11, 07:13, 08:22, 09:01, 09:03, 10:07, 10:13, 10:15, 10:17, 11:10, 11:12, 11:16, 11:19, 11:30, 12:01, 12:03, 12:06, 12:08

* body is found in: 12:01, 12:03

* bold, boldly, boldness is found in: 03:12, 10:01

* bread is found in: 09:10

* brother is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 02:12, 08:01, 08:18, 08:22, 09:03, 11:07, 12:16

* burden is found in: 05:04, 08:13, 11:07, 12:11, 12:14, 12:16

* call, calling, called, call out is found in: 01:23

* captive, captivity is found in: 10:05

* caught up, caught up with is found in: 12:01

* children, child is found in: 06:11, 12:14

* Christ, Messiah is found in: 01:05, 02:10, 02:12, 03:01, 03:14, 04:03, 05:09, 05:13, 05:18, 05:20, 06:14, 08:22, 09:12, 10:01, 10:05, 10:07, 10:13, 11:01, 11:03, 11:10, 11:12, 11:22, 12:01, 12:08, 12:19, 13:03

* church, Church is found in: 01:01, 08:01, 08:18, 08:22, 11:07, 11:27, 12:11

* clean, cleanse is found in: 07:01

* clothe, clothed is found in: 05:01, 05:04

* comfort, comforter is found in: 01:03, 01:05, 02:05, 07:02, 07:05, 07:13

* command, to command, commandment is found in: 08:08

* condemn, condemnation is found in: 03:09, 06:08, 07:02

* confess, confession is found in: 09:12

* confidence, confident is found in: 01:05, 01:15, 02:03, 03:04, 03:12, 05:06, 07:02, 07:15, 09:03, 10:01, 11:16, 13:05

* confirm, confirmation is found in: 01:21

* conscience is found in: 01:12, 04:01, 05:11

* Corinth, Corinthians is found in: 01:01, 01:23, 06:11

* counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 08:10

* covenant is found in: 03:14

* create, creation, Creator is found in: 05:16

* crucify is found in: 13:03

* cut off is found in: 11:12

* Damascus is found in: 11:32

* darkness is found in: 06:14

* day of the Lord, day of Yahweh is found in: 01:12

* death, die, dead is found in: 01:08, 02:16, 04:07, 04:11, 05:13, 06:08, 07:02, 07:08, 11:22

* deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 06:08, 11:03

* deliver, deliverer, deliverance is found in: 01:08

* descendant, descended from is found in: 11:22

* desert, wilderness is found in: 11:24

* dishonor, dishonorable is found in: 06:08

* disobey, disobedient, disobedience is found in: 10:05
* divine is found in: 10:03
* earth, earthly is found in: 01:12, 05:01
* encourage, encouragement is found in: 02:08, 07:13, 13:11
* endure, endurance is found in: 06:04
* enslave, in bondage is found in: 11:19
* everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 04:16, 05:01
* Eve is found in: 11:03
* exalt, exaltation is found in: 11:07
* faith is found in: 01:23, 04:13, 05:06, 08:06, 10:15, 13:05
* faithful, faithfulness is found in: 01:17
* false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 04:03
* false prophet is found in: 11:12
* ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 01:03
* favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 01:11, 06:01
* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 05:11, 07:01, 07:05, 07:11, 07:15, 11:03, 12:20
* fellowship is found in: 06:14, 13:13
* flesh is found in: 10:01, 10:03, 11:16, 12:06
* fool, foolish, folly is found in: 11:01, 11:16, 11:19, 12:06, 12:11
* forever is found in: 09:08, 11:30
* forgive, forgiveness is found in: 02:05, 02:10, 12:11
* sexual immorality is found in: 12:20
* forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 04:07
* free, freedom, liberty is found in: 03:17
* Gentile is found in: 11:24
* gift is found in: 09:03, 09:12
* glorify is found in: 09:12
* glory, glorious is found in: 01:19, 03:07, 03:09, 03:12, 03:17, 04:03, 04:05, 04:13, 04:16
* God is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 01:17, 01:21, 02:14, 02:16, 04:05, 04:13, 05:01, 05:04, 05:11, 05:13, 05:18, 05:20, 06:01, 07:01, 07:05, 07:11, 08:01, 08:16, 09:06, 09:08, 09:10, 09:12, 10:05, 10:13, 11:07, 11:10, 12:01, 12:03, 12:19, 12:20, 13:03, 13:07, 13:11, 13:13
* godly, godliness is found in: 07:08, 07:11, 11:01

* God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:01, 06:17, 11:30

* good, goodness is found in: 05:09

* good news, gospel is found in: 02:12, 04:03, 08:18, 09:12, 10:13, 10:15, 11:03, 11:07

* gossip is found in: 12:20

* governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 11:32

* grace, gracious is found in: 01:01, 01:11, 01:12, 04:13, 06:01, 08:01, 08:08, 09:12, 12:08, 13:13

* groan is found in: 05:01

* hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 04:11, 06:04

* hard, hardness, harden is found in: 11:22, 11:27

* harvest is found in: 09:10

* heart is found in: 01:21, 02:03, 03:01, 03:14, 04:05, 05:11, 06:11, 07:02, 08:16, 09:06

* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 05:01, 12:01

* Hebrew is found in: 11:22

* holy, holiness is found in: 07:01, 13:11

* Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 01:21, 03:01, 03:07, 03:17, 05:04, 06:04, 13:13

* honor, to honor is found in: 06:08, 08:18, 08:20, 08:22

* hope is found in: 01:08, 10:15

* humble, humility is found in: 10:01, 11:07, 12:20

* idol, idolatrous is found in: 06:14

* image of God, image is found in: 04:03

* in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him is found in: 01:21, 02:14, 02:16, 05:16

* innocent is found in: 07:11

* Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 03:07, 03:12, 11:22

* jealous, jealousy is found in: 11:01, 12:20

* Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 01:19, 04:05, 04:13, 08:08, 11:03, 11:30, 13:05, 13:13

* Jew, Jewish, Jews is found in: 11:24

* joy, joyful is found in: 01:23, 02:03, 07:02, 07:13, 08:01

* Judea is found in: 01:15

* judge, judgment is found in: 05:09, 05:16

* just, justice, justly is found in: 07:11

* kiss is found in: 13:11

* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 02:14, 04:05, 04:13, 06:04, 08:06, 10:05, 11:05

* labor, laborer is found in: 10:15

* lawless, lawlessness is found in: 06:14

* letter, epistle is found in: 03:01, 07:08, 10:09, 10:11

* life, live, living, alive is found in: 02:16, 03:01, 03:04, 04:01, 04:07, 04:11, 05:01, 05:04, 05:13, 06:14, 07:02, 13:03, 13:11

* light is found in: 04:03, 04:05, 06:14, 11:14

* like, likeness is found in: 03:17

* Lord is found in: 01:01, 02:12, 03:14, 03:17, 04:05, 04:13, 05:06, 05:11, 06:17, 08:03, 08:08, 08:18, 08:20, 10:07, 10:17, 11:16, 11:30, 12:01, 12:08, 13:09, 13:13

* love is found in: 02:03, 05:13, 06:04, 08:06, 08:08, 08:22, 09:06, 11:10, 12:14, 13:11, 13:13

* lust is found in: 12:20

* Macedonia is found in: 01:15, 02:12, 07:05, 08:01, 09:01, 11:07

* meek, meekness is found in: 10:01

* mercy, merciful is found in: 01:03, 04:01

* messenger is found in: 12:06

* mighty, might is found in: 12:11

* mind is found in: 03:14, 04:03, 05:13, 11:22

* minister, ministry is found in: 04:01, 05:18, 06:01, 08:03, 09:01

* Moses is found in: 03:07, 03:12, 03:14

* new covenant is found in: 03:04

* obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 02:08, 07:15, 09:12, 10:05

* patient, patience is found in: 01:05, 06:04, 12:11

* Paul, Saul is found in: 01:01, 10:01

* peace, peaceful is found in: 01:01, 02:12, 13:11

* people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 03:12, 08:08, 09:01, 10:11, 11:12, 11:16

* people of God, my people is found in: 06:14

* perfect is found in: 12:08

* perish, perishing, perishable is found in: 02:14, 02:16, 04:03

* persecute, persecution is found in: 04:07, 12:08

* plead, pleading, plea is found in: 08:03

* pledge is found in: 05:04
* possess, possession is found in: 06:08
* power, powers is found in: 04:07, 06:04, 10:03, 12:08, 13:03
* praise is found in: 01:03, 03:01, 06:08, 08:18, 10:11, 11:30, 12:11
* pray, prayer is found in: 01:11, 09:12, 13:07, 13:09
* preach is found in: 02:12, 10:15, 11:03, 11:07
* prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 06:04, 11:22
* proclaim, proclamation is found in: 01:19, 04:05, 08:18, 11:03
* profit, profitable is found in: 02:16
* promise is found in: 01:19, 07:01, 09:03, 11:01
* proud, pride, prideful is found in: 01:12, 05:11, 07:02, 12:06, 12:20
* puffed up is found in: 12:06
* punish, punishment is found in: 02:05, 06:08, 10:05
* pure, purify, purification is found in: 02:16, 06:04, 11:01, 11:03
* raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 01:08, 04:13, 05:13
* reap, reaper is found in: 09:06
* receive is found in: 01:15, 04:01, 06:01
* reconcile, reconciliation is found in: 05:18, 05:20
* rejoice is found in: 02:03, 06:08, 07:05, 07:08, 07:13, 07:15, 13:09, 13:11
* repent, repentance is found in: 07:08, 12:20
* restore, restoration is found in: 13:11
* reveal, revelation is found in: 12:01, 12:06
* righteous, righteousness is found in: 03:09, 05:20, 06:04, 06:14, 09:08, 09:10, 11:14
* sacred is found in: 12:03
* sacrifice, offering is found in: 05:20
* salvation is found in: 01:05, 06:01, 07:08
* Satan, devil, evil one is found in: 02:10, 11:14, 12:06
* save, safe is found in: 02:14, 02:16
* seal, to seal is found in: 01:21
* seed is found in: 09:10
* send, send out, sent is found in: 02:16

* serpent, snake, viper is found in: 11:03
* servant, slave, slavery is found in: 03:04, 04:05, 06:04, 11:14, 11:22
* serve, service is found in: 03:09, 09:12, 11:07
* set apart is found in: 06:17
* shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 04:01, 09:03, 10:07, 11:19
* sign, proof, reminder is found in: 12:11
* Silas, Silvanus is found in: 01:19
* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 05:20, 11:07, 12:20, 13:01
* slander, slanderer is found in: 06:08
* son, son of is found in: 06:17
* Son of God, the Son, Son is found in: 01:19
* soul is found in: 12:14
* sow, sower, plant is found in: 09:06, 09:10
* spirit, spiritual is found in: 04:13, 07:01, 07:13, 11:03
* stronghold, fortress, fortified is found in: 10:03
* stumble is found in: 11:27
* stumbling block, stone of stumbling is found in: 06:01
* suffer, suffering is found in: 01:05, 07:08, 07:11
* temple is found in: 06:14
* tent is found in: 05:01, 05:04
* terror, terrify is found in: 10:09
* test is found in: 08:01, 08:22, 09:12, 13:05, 13:07
* testimony, testify is found in: 01:12
* Timothy is found in: 01:01, 01:19
* Titus is found in: 02:12, 07:05, 07:13, 08:06, 08:16, 08:22, 12:16
* tremble is found in: 07:15
* trespass is found in: 05:18
* Troas is found in: 02:12
* trouble, troubles, troubled is found in: 07:05, 12:08
* true, truth, come true is found in: 04:01, 06:08, 06:11, 07:13, 11:10, 12:06, 12:11, 13:07
* turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 03:14

* unbeliever, unbelief is found in: 04:03, 06:14
* unclean is found in: 06:17, 07:01
* veil is found in: 03:12, 03:14, 04:03
* virgin is found in: 11:01
* vision is found in: 12:01
* walk is found in: 05:06, 10:03, 12:16
* will of God is found in: 01:01, 08:03
* wise, wisdom is found in: 01:12, 11:19
* witness, eyewitness is found in: 01:23, 08:03, 13:01
* word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 02:16, 04:01
* word of truth is found in: 06:04
* works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 08:06, 09:08, 10:15, 11:22, 11:27, 13:11
* world, worldly is found in: 01:12, 04:03, 05:18, 07:08
* worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 02:16, 10:09
* written is found in: 04:13, 08:13, 09:08
* wrong, mistreat, hurt is found in: 07:02, 07:11, 12:11, 13:07
* zeal, zealous is found in: 07:11

2 Corinthians 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The first paragraph is a reflection of a common way to begin a letter in the ancient Near East.

This chapter begins with a much softer tone than any of the chapters in Paul's earlier letter to the Corinthian church, known as First Corinthians.

Paul's Integrity

People have been criticizing Paul and saying he is not sincere. He refutes them by explaining his motives for what he is doing.

Special Concepts

Comfort

This is a major theme of this chapter. Comforting christians is a work of the Holy Spirit. It is probable that there was some affliction and the Corinthians needed to be comforted.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

Paul uses two rhetorical questions for the purpose of defending himself against a charge of insincerity. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

We

It is likely that Paul's usage of the pronoun "we" represents at least Timothy and himself. It is possible that it may also include other people.

Guarantee

The Holy Spirit is said to be the guarantee, pledge or down-payment of a Christian's eternal life. While a Christian's salvation is secure, they do not get to experience the promises given to them until after their death. It is only then that they will experience their receiving of the gift of eternal life. The Holy Spirit is shown here to be a personal guarantee that this will happen. This concept comes from a business term whereby a person would give some valuable item to another person as a "guarantee" that they would repay money. (See: everlasting, eternal, eternity and save, safe)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 01:01 Notes**
- **Introduction to 2 Corinthians**

2 Corinthians 1:1-2

UDB:

[1] I, Paul, together with Timothy our brother, write this letter to you. Christ Jesus sent me to serve him and to obey God's will. We are sending this letter to those who come together as God's people in the city of Corinth; we are also sending it to the all Christians who live in the region of Achaia—people whom God has set apart for himself. [2] May God give you the free gifts of his love and peace—these things that come from God our Father and from the Lord Jesus Christ.

ULB:

1 [1] Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and Timothy our brother, to the church of God that is in Corinth, and to all the believers in the entire region of Achaia. [2] May grace be to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- apostle, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- will of God
- Timothy
- brother
- church, Church
- God
- Corinth, Corinthians
- believer
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - After Paul's greeting to the church in Corinth, he writes about suffering and comfort through Jesus Christ. Timothy is with him as well.
- **General Information:** - The word "you" throughout this letter refers to the people of the church in Corinth and to the rest of the Christians in that area. Possibly Timothy writes on parchment paper the words that Paul says.

- **Paul ... to the church of God that is in Corinth** - Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter and its intended audience. AT: "I, Paul ... wrote this letter to you, the church of God that is in Corinth"
- **Timothy our brother** - This indicates that both Paul and the Corinthians knew Timothy and considered him to be their spiritual brother.
- **Achaia** - This is the name of a Roman province in the southern part of modern-day Greece. (See: How to Translate Names)
- **May grace be to you and peace** - This is a common greeting that Paul uses in his letters.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:3-4

UDB:

[3] May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ—he is the one who does us acts of kindness and who always comforts us. [4] God comforts us when we go through any painful trial. His comfort heals our lives so we can give away that very same comfort to other people who are suffering.

ULB:

[3] May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised. He is the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort. [4] God comforts us in all our affliction, so that we can comfort those who are in any affliction. We comfort others with the same comfort that God used to comfort us.

translationWords:

- praise
- ancestor, father, forefather
- mercy, merciful
- comfort, comforter
- afflict, affliction

translationNotes:

- **May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “May we always praise the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ” (See: Active or Passive)
- **the God and Father** - “God, who is the Father”
- **the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort** - These two phrases express the same idea in two different ways. Both phrases refer to God. (See: Parallelism)
- **the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort** - Possible meanings are 1) that the words “mercies” and “all comfort” describe the character of “Father” and “God” or 2) that the words “Father” and “God” refer to one who is the source of “mercies” and “all comfort.”
- **comforts us in all our affliction** - Here “us” and “our” include the Corinthians. (See: Inclusive “We”)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:5-7

UDB:

5 Just as we experience the sufferings of Christ which are beyond all measure, we also experience through Christ comfort that cannot be measured. 6 So whenever we experience sufferings, it is so God may comfort you and rescue you from danger. Whenever God comforts us, it is so you can be comforted even more, so he can teach you to wait for God, when you suffer in the same way we suffered. 7 We are certain about what will happen to you; because you suffer like we suffer, God will also comfort you, as he does us.

ULB:

5 For just as the sufferings of Christ abound for our sake, so also our comfort abounds through Christ. 6 But if we are afflicted, it is for your comfort and salvation. And if we are comforted, it is for your comfort. Your comfort is working effectively when you patiently share in the same sufferings that we also suffer. 7 And our confidence about you is certain. We know that as you also share the sufferings, you also share the comfort.

translationWords:

- suffer, suffering
- Christ, Messiah
- comfort, comforter
- afflict, affliction
- salvation
- patient, patience
- confidence, confident

translationNotes:

- **For just as the sufferings of Christ abound for our sake** - Paul speaks of Christ's sufferings as if they were objects that could increase in number. AT: "For just as Christ suffered greatly for our sake" (See: Metaphor)
- **the sufferings of Christ** - Possible meanings are 1) that this refers to the suffering that Paul and Timothy experience because they preach the message about Christ or 2) that this refers to the suffering that Christ experienced on their behalf.
- **our comfort abounds** - Paul speaks of comfort as if it were an object that could increase in size. (See: Metaphor)
- **But if we are afflicted** - Here the word "we" refers to Paul and Timothy, but not to the Corinthians. This can be stated in active form. AT: "But if people afflict us" (See Exclusive "We" and Active or Passive)

- **if we are comforted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “if God comforts us” (See Active or Passive)
- **Your comfort is working effectively** - “You experience effective comfort”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:8-10

UDB:

[8] Brothers and sisters in Christ, we want you to know about the trouble we had in the province of Asia. That trouble gave us such pain that we could not bear it. We were almost certain that we were going to die. [9] They pronounced the sentence of death on us; we were waiting to be killed. That sentence of death taught us not to rely on our own strength but on God, who raises the dead and brings them back to life. [10] But God rescued us from those terrible dangers, and he promises to rescue us in the future.

ULB:

[8] For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, about the troubles we had in Asia. We were completely crushed beyond what we could bear, so much that we did not even hope to live any longer. [9] Indeed, we had the sentence of death on us. But that was to make us not put our trust in ourselves, but instead in God, who raises the dead. [10] He rescued us from such a deadly peril, and he will rescue us again. We have set our confidence in him that he will deliver us yet again.

translationWords:

- brother
- Asia
- hope
- death, die, dead
- God
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance

translationNotes:

- **we do not want you to be ignorant** - This can be stated in positive terms. AT: “we want you to know” (See: Litotes)
- **We were completely crushed beyond what we could bear** - Paul and Timothy refer to their emotions of despair being like a heavy weight they have to carry. (See: Metaphor)
- **We were completely crushed** - The word “crushed” refers to the feeling of despair. This can be stated in active form. AT: “The troubles we experienced completely crushed us” or “We were in complete despair” (See: Active or Passive)
- **we had the sentence of death on us** - Paul and Timothy are comparing their feeling of despair to that of someone condemned to die. AT: “we were in despair like someone who is condemned to die” (See: Metaphor)

- **but instead in God** - The words “put our trust” are left out of this phrase. AT: “but instead, to put our trust in God” (See: Ellipsis)
- **who raises the dead** - “who brings the dead back to life”
- **a deadly peril** - Paul compares his feeling of despair as a result of the troubles that they experienced to a deadly peril or terrible danger. AT: “despair” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:11

UDB:

11 He will do this as you help us by praying for us. Now many thank God because he has been so kind to us, since many have prayed for us.

ULB:

11 He will do this as you also help us by your prayer. Then many will give thanks on our behalf for the gracious favor given to us through the prayers of many.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- grace, gracious
- favor, favorable, favoritism

translationNotes:

- **He will do this as you also help us** - "God will rescue us from danger as you, the people of the church of Corinth, also help us"
- **the gracious favor given to us** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the gracious favor which God has given to us" (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:12-14

UDB:

12 We can very happily say that we have we lived toward all people in an honest and sincere way. We lived in the world as God's own people and we have deep trust in God, that was a gift from him. We do not live in any way that the world values. We do not listen to the world's wisdom when we choose what we will do. Instead, God has made us honest and holy in how we live. 13 You have read my letters. I have written them so you can understand them. 14 You know a little about us already, but on the day when the Lord Jesus returns, I hope that you will be very proud of us in his presence, and we will be very proud of you.

ULB:

12 We are proud of this: the testimony of our conscience. For it is in pure motives and sincerity that comes from God that we have conducted ourselves in the world. We have done this all the more with you—not in earthly wisdom, but by the grace of God. 13 We do not write to you anything you cannot read or understand. I hope that, 14 just as you have understood us in part, we will be your reason for boasting on the day of our Lord Jesus, just as you will be our reason to boast.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- testimony, testify
- conscience
- world, worldly
- earth, earthly
- wise, wisdom
- grace, gracious
- day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **We are proud of this ... your reason for boasting** - The words "proud" and "boasting" here are used in the positive sense of feeling great satisfaction and joy in something.
- **testimony of our conscience** - Paul's and Timothy's thoughts about their own actions testify that they have behaved in a way that pleases God.
- **not in earthly wisdom** - Here the word "earthly" refers to that which characterizes human society that does not trust in God. AT: "not according to human wisdom" (See: Metonymy)
- **We do not write to you anything you cannot read or understand** - This can be stated in positive terms. AT: "You can read and understand everything we write to you" (See: Double Negatives)

- **just as you will be ours** - You can supply the words “our reason for pride” to fill in the ellipsis. AT: “just as you will be our reason for pride” (See: Ellipsis)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:15-16

UDB:

15 I am so sure that this will be the case that I have wanted to come to you first, so I could visit
you twice. 16 I planned to see you both when I was on my way to Macedonia and then when I was
coming back from there, so you could send me on my way to Judea.

ULB:

15 Because I was confident about this, I wanted to come to you first, so that you might receive the
benefit of two visits. 16 I was planning to visit you on my way to Macedonia. Then I wanted to visit
you again on my trip from Macedonia, and then for you to send me on my way to Judea.

translationWords:

- confidence, confident
- receive
- Macedonia
- Judea

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul explains his sincere expectation with pure motives to come see the believers in Corinth after his first letter.
- **General Information:** - Paul wrote at least 3 letters to the Corinthians. Only 2 letters to Corinth are recorded in the Bible.
- **Because I was confident about this** - The word “this” refers to Paul’s previous comments about the Corinthians.
- **you might receive the benefit of two visits** - “you might benefit from me visiting you twice”
- **send me on my way to Judea** - “assist me on my way to Judea”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:17-18

UDB:

17 My mind was made up that this would be the plan. I was not telling you "Yes" and then telling you "No." I was not making my plans like unbelievers often make plans. 18 But God is faithful in guiding us, and we do not confuse you, either. We are making our plans and staying with them.

ULB:

17 When I was thinking this way, was I hesitating? Do I plan things according to human standards, so that I say "Yes, yes" and "No, no" at the same time? 18 But just as God is faithful, we do not say both "Yes" and "No."

translationWords:

- God
- faithful, faithfulness

translationNotes:

- **was I hesitating?** - Paul uses this question to emphasize he was sure about his decision to visit the Corinthians. The expected answer to the question is no. AT: "I was not hesitating" or "I was confident in my decision" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **Do I plan things according to human standards ... at the same time?** - Paul uses this question to emphasize that his plans to visit the Corinthians were sincere. AT: "I do not plan things according to human standards ... at the same time" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **so that I say "Yes, yes" and "No, no" at the same time** - This means that Paul did not say both that he would visit and that he would not visit at the same time. The words "yes" and "no" are repeated for emphasis. AT: "so that I say 'Yes, I will certainly visit' and 'No, I will definitely not visit' at the same time" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Doublet)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:19-20

UDB:

[19] Our “Yes” comes from the Son of God, Jesus Christ—the one we proclaimed to you; and there has never been any confusion in him—with him there is no “Yes and then No.” Instead, it has always been simply “Yes” in him. [20] For the promises of God are “Yes” because they come from him. And we add our confirmation to his “Yes.” And we say about God’s honor: “It is True! Yes!”

ULB:

[19] For the Son of God, Jesus Christ, whom Silvanus, Timothy and I proclaimed among you, is not “Yes” and “No.” Instead, he is always “Yes.” [20] For all the promises of God are “Yes” in him. So also through him we say “Amen” to the glory of God.

translationWords:

- Son of God, the Son, Son
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Silas, Silvanus
- Timothy
- proclaim, proclamation
- promise
- amen, truly
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **For the Son of God ... is not “Yes” and “No.” Instead, he is always “Yes.”** - Jesus says “Yes” concerning the promises of God, which means that he guarantees that they are true. AT: “For the Son of God ... does not say ”Yes” and “No” concerning God’s promises. Instead, he always says “Yes” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **the Son of God** - This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)
- **all the promises of God are “Yes” in him** - This means that Jesus guarantees all of God’s promises. AT: “all the promises of God are guaranteed in Jesus Christ” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **“Yes” in him ... through him we say** - The word “him” refers to Jesus Christ.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:21-22

UDB:

[21] God makes the bond between us Christians strong because we both are joined to Christ, and he is the one who sends us out to tell people the good news. [22] He put his official seal on us, so people will know he approves of us. And he gave us the Spirit who lives within us, as an unbreakable promise that he will do even more things for us.

ULB:

[21] Now it is God who confirms us with you in Christ, and he commissioned us. [22] He set his seal on us and gave us the Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee of what he would later give us.

translationWords:

- God
- confirm, confirmation
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- seal, to seal
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- heart

translationNotes:

- **God who confirms us with you** - Possible meanings are 1) “God who confirms our relationship with each other because we are in Christ” or 2) “God who confirms both our and your relationship with Christ.”
- **he commissioned us** - Possible meanings are 1) “he commissioned us to preach the gospel” (UDB) or 2) “he anointed us to be his people.”
- **He set his seal on us** - This means that God has marked believers as his own possession. AT: “He marked us as his own possession” (See: Metaphor)
- **gave us the Spirit in our hearts** - Here the word “hearts” refers to the innermost part of a person. AT: “gave us the Spirit to live within each of us” (See: Synecdoche)
- **the Spirit ... as a guarantee** - The Spirit is spoken of as if he was a partial downpayment toward eternal life. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 1:23-24

UDB:

[23] May God himself assure you about my reason for not coming to you, Christians in Corinth: it was so that you would not have to face me giving correction to you. [24] We are not like masters who give you orders about how you must trust in God. However, we want to work with you, so you can learn to trust God no matter what happens, and have joy in trusting him.

ULB:

[23] Instead, I call God to bear witness for me that the reason I did not come to Corinth was so that I might spare you. [24] This is not because we are trying to control what your faith should be. Instead, we are working with you for your joy, as you stand in your faith.

translationWords:

- call, calling, called, call out
- witness, eyewitness
- Corinth, Corinthians
- faith
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **I call God to bear witness for me** - The phrase “bear witness” refers to a person telling what they have seen or heard in order to settle an argument. AT: “I ask God to show what I say is true”
- **so that I might spare you** - “so that I might not cause you more suffering”
- **we are working with you for your joy** - “we are working with you so that you may have joy”
- **stand in your faith** - The word “stand” can refer to something that does not change. AT: “remain firm in your faith” (See: Idiom)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 01 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 01 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2 General Notes

Special Concepts

Harsh writing

This chapter is, in large part, written in reference to a previous letter Paul wrote to the Corinthians. This letter had a harsh, corrective time. It probably was written in between the letter known as First Corinthians and this letter. It also references a specific situation in the church which can only be understood implicitly. It is probable that the church was forced to rebuke an erring member and now Paul is encouraging them to show grace to this person. (See: grace, gracious and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Aroma

A sweet aroma or smell is pleasing. This is an important image in Scripture. Things that are pleasing to God are often described as having a pleasing aroma.

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 02:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 2:1-2

UDB:

[1] In the last visit I made to Corinth I know that I hurt you very much by what I said to you. I decided this time that I would not make another painful visit to you. [2] I caused you much pain on my last visit, and the people who could cheer me up the most would be the same people whom I hurt when I was there.

ULB:

2 [1] So I decided for my own part that I would not again come to you in painful circumstances. [2] If I caused you pain, who could cheer me up but the very one who was hurt by me?

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Because of his great love for them, Paul makes it clear that his rebuke in his first letter to them (the rebuke of their acceptance of the sin of immorality) caused him pain as well as pain to the church people in Corinth and the immoral man.
- **I decided for my own part** - "I made the decision"
- **in painful circumstances** - "in circumstances that would cause you pain"
- **If I caused you pain, who could cheer me up but the very one who was hurt by me?** - Paul uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that neither he nor they would benefit if his coming to them would cause them pain. AT: "If I caused you pain, the only ones who could cheer me up would be the very ones whom I had hurt" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **the very one who was hurt by me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the very one whom I had hurt" (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:3-4

UDB:

[3] I wrote that letter to you so when I came to you, you would not make me feel sad again—you, who should actually make me rejoice! I was sure that we all have the reasons to be joyful. [4] I wrote to you then because I still had much hurt and pain in my heart—I cried many tears for you, and I did not want to hurt you anymore. I want you to know how much I love all of you.

ULB:

[3] I wrote as I did in order that when I came to you I might not be hurt by those who should have made me rejoice. I have confidence about all of you that my joy is the same joy you all have. [4] For I wrote to you from great affliction, with anguish of heart, and with many tears. I did not want to cause you pain. Instead, I wanted you to know the depth of the love that I have for you.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- confidence, confident
- joy, joyful
- afflict, affliction
- heart
- love

translationNotes:

- **I wrote as I did** - This refers to another letter that Paul had written to the Corinthian Christians that no longer exists. AT: "I wrote as I did in my previous letter" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **I might not be hurt by those who should have made me rejoice** - Paul is speaking about the behavior of certain Corinthian believers who caused him emotional pain. This can be stated in active form. AT: "those who should have made me rejoice might not hurt me" (See: Active or Passive)
- **my joy is the same joy you all have** - "what gives me joy is what gives you joy, too"
- **from great affliction** - Here the word "affliction" refers to emotional pain.
- **with anguish of heart** - Here the word "heart" refers to the location of the emotions. AT: "with extreme sorrow" (See: Metonymy)
- **with many tears** - "with much crying"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:5-7

UDB:

[5] This person who fell into sin—he did not just make me sad by what he did; his sin made all of you sad. [6] We all agree what we should do about this man and his sin. He has now been punished and his punishment was fair. [7] So this is where we are now: he suffered through his punishment, but now it is time to forgive him for what he did and to love him so that he might not be discouraged by feeling too sad.

ULB:

[5] If anyone has caused pain, he has not caused it only to me, but in some measure—not to put it too harshly—to all of you. [6] This punishment of that person by the majority is enough. [7] So now rather than punishment, you should forgive and comfort him. Do this so that he is not overwhelmed by too much sorrow.

translationWords:

- punish, punishment
- forgive, forgiveness
- comfort, comforter

translationNotes:

- **in some measure** - “to some extent”
- **not to put it too harshly** - Possible meanings are 1) “I do not want to say it too severely” or 2) “I do not want to exaggerate.”
- **This punishment of that person by the majority is enough** - This can be stated in active form. The word “punishment” can be translated using a verb. AT: “The way that the majority has punished that person is enough” (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)
- **is enough** - “is sufficient”
- **he is not overwhelmed by too much sorrow** - This means to have a strong emotional response of too much sorrow. This can be stated in active form. AT: “too much sorrow does not overwhelm him” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:8-9

UDB:

[8] In front of all the believers, tell him how much you love him. [9] I wrote you to see if you would obey God and deal with this problem.

ULB:

[8] So I encourage you to publicly affirm your love for him. [9] This was the reason I wrote, so that I might test you and know whether you are obedient in everything.

translationWords:

- encourage, encouragement
- obey, obedient, obedience

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul encourages the church in Corinth to show love and to forgive the person they have punished. He writes that he, also, has forgiven him.
- **publicly affirm your love for him** - This means that they are to confirm their love for this man in the presence of all of the believers.
- **you are obedient in everything** - Possible meanings are 1) "you are obedient to God in everything" or 2) "you are obedient in everything that I have taught you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:10-11

UDB:

10 So the man you forgave, I also forgive. Whatever I have forgiven—even the smallest matters—I have forgiven out of my love for you, and I forgive as though Christ were standing in front of me. 11 By forgiving this man, we made it so Satan could not trick us into doing something worse. We know all about his tricks and his lies.

ULB:

10 If you forgive anyone, I forgive that person as well. What I have forgiven—if I have forgiven anything—it is forgiven for your sake in the presence of Christ. 11 This is so that Satan will not trick us. For we are not ignorant of his plans.

translationWords:

- forgive, forgiveness
- Christ, Messiah
- Satan, devil, evil one

translationNotes:

- **it is forgiven for your sake** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I have forgiven it for your sake” (See: Active or Passive)
- **forgiven for your sake** - Possible meanings are 1) “forgiven out of my love for you” (UDB) or 2) “forgiven for your benefit.”
- **For we are not ignorant of his plans** - Paul uses a negative expression to emphasize the opposite. AT: “For we know his plans well” (See: Litotes)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:12-13

UDB:

[12] Even though the Lord opened many ways for us to share the good news in the city of Troas, [13] I was worried about our brother Titus, because I did not find him there. So I left the believers in Troas and returned to Macedonia to look for him.

ULB:

[12] A door was opened to me by the Lord when I came to the city of Troas to preach the gospel of Christ there. [13] Even so, I had no peace of mind, because I did not find my brother Titus there. So I left them and returned to Macedonia.

translationWords:

- Lord
- Troas
- preach
- good news, gospel
- Christ, Messiah
- peace, peaceful
- brother
- Titus
- Macedonia

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul encourages the believers in Corinth by telling them of the opportunities he has had to preach the gospel in Troas and Macedonia.
- **A door was opened to me by the Lord ... to preach the gospel** - Paul speaks of his opportunity to preach the gospel as if it were a door through which he was allowed to walk. This can be stated in active form. AT: "The Lord opened a door to me ... to preach the gospel" or "The Lord gave me the opportunity ... to preach the gospel" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)
- **I had no peace of mind** - "My mind was troubled" or "I was worried"
- **my brother Titus** - Paul speaks of Titus as his spiritual brother.
- **So I left them** - "So I left the people of Troas"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:14-15

UDB:

14 We thank God that we are joined together with Christ, and Christ always leads us in his march of victory. Through our lives and our message, everywhere we go, we are like those who have been near burning incense; but our fragrance does not come from real incense, but it comes from knowing Christ, and because we know him we have his fragrant aroma. 15 God smells this same fragrance, and it reminds him of Christ. And those who God rescues smell this same fragrance in us. Even the people whom God does not rescue smell that aroma that reminds them of Christ.

ULB:

14 But may thanks be to God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph. Through us he spreads the sweet aroma of the knowledge of him everywhere. 15 For we are to God the sweet aroma of Christ, both among those who are saved and among those who are perishing.

translationWords:

- God
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- know, knowledge, make known
- save, safe
- perish, perishing, perishable

translationNotes:

- **God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph** - Paul speaks of God as if he were a victorious general leading a victory parade and of himself and his coworkers as those who take part in that parade. Possible meanings are 1) "God, who in Christ always causes us to share in his triumph" or 2) "God, who in Christ always leads us in triumph as those over whom he as gained victory" (See: Metaphor)
- **Through us he spreads the sweet aroma of the knowledge of him everywhere** - Paul speaks of the knowledge of Christ as if it were incense that has a pleasing smell. AT: "He causes the knowledge of Christ to spread to everyone who hears us, just as the sweet smell of burning incense spreads to everyone near it" (See: Metaphor)
- **everywhere** - "everywhere we go"
- **we are to God the sweet aroma of Christ** - Paul speaks of his ministry as if it were a burnt offering that someone offers to God. (See: Metaphor)
- **the sweet aroma of Christ** - Possible meanings are 1) "the sweet aroma which is the knowledge of Christ" or 2) "the sweet aroma that Christ offers."
- **those who are saved** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "those whom God has saved" (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 2:16-17

UDB:

16 To those people that God does not rescue, that aroma of Christ is like the smell of a dead person dying once again. But to those whom God is rescuing—they smell Christ, who is alive, coming to make them alive, too. Indeed, no one is able by himself to spread this fragrance! 17 You know that many people go from city to city selling the word of God for money. But we are not like them. We work hard to please God and we do what he wants. And we speak about Christ because we know God sees everything we do, and we announce Christ because we are joined to him.

ULB:

16 To the people who are perishing, it is an aroma from death to death. To the ones being saved, it is an aroma from life to life. Who is worthy of these things? 17 For we are not like so many people who sell the word of God for profit. Instead, with purity of motives, we speak in Christ, as we are sent from God, in the sight of God.

translationWords:

- perish, perishing, perishable
- death, die, dead
- save, safe
- life, live, living, alive
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- profit, profitable
- pure, purify, purification
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- send, send out, sent
- God

translationNotes:

- **it is an aroma** - "the knowledge of Christ is an aroma." This refers back to 2:14, where Paul speaks of the knowledge of Christ as if it were incense that has a pleasing smell. (See: Metaphor)
- **an aroma from death to death** - Possible meanings are 1) that the word "death" is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means "an aroma that causes death" or 2) "an aroma of death that causes people to die" (See: Doublet)
- **the ones being saved** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the ones whom God is saving" (See: Active or Passive)

- **aroma from life to life** - Possible meanings are 1) that the word “life” is repeated for emphasis and the phrase means “an aroma that gives life” or 2) “an aroma of life that gives people live” (See: Doublet)
- **Who is worthy of these things?** - Paul uses this question to emphasize that no one is worthy to do the ministry that God has called them to do. AT: “No one is worthy of these things” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **purity of motives** - “pure motives”
- **we speak in Christ** - “we speak as people who are joined to Christ” or “we speak with the authority of Christ”
- **as we are sent from God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as people whom God has sent” (See: Active or Passive)
- **in the sight of God** - Paul and his coworkers preach the gospel with the awareness that God is watching them. AT: “we speak in the presence of God” (See: Ellipsis)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 02 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 02 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Paul continues his defense. Paul views the Corinthian Christians as the proof of his work.

Special concepts in this chapter

Law of Moses

There are many allusions to God giving the law of Moses. This chapter will be difficult to fully understand if the Old Testament has not yet been translated. This chapter contrasts the covenant God made with Moses with the New Covenant. Although the law was good, because it was revealed by God, it brought punishment to Israel because they were unable to obey it. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, covenant, new covenant and reveal, revelation)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

There are many metaphors used in this chapter to explain complex spiritual truths. It is unclear whether this makes Paul's teaching easier or more difficult to understand. (See: Metaphor)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"This is a covenant not of the letter but of the Spirit."

It is uncertain what this means but the New Covenant is contrasted with the law of Moses. The New Covenant is not comprised of a system of rules and regulations. It is possible that the term spirit is a reference to the Holy Spirit, but it may also be a reference to the New Covenant being "spiritual" in nature. (See: spirit, spiritual)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 03:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 3:1-3

UDB:

[1] You know us well, and you should trust us. A stranger might need someone you know to write you a letter to introduce him to you, but you know us very well. [2] You yourselves are like a letter that introduces us to other people, because everyone who knows you can see how much you trust us. [3] The way you live is like a letter that Christ himself has written and that we brought to you. Of course, it is not a letter written with ink or on stone tablets. No, it is a letter that the Spirit of the true God has written on your own hearts.

ULB:

3 [1] Are we beginning to praise ourselves again? We do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people, do we? [2] You yourselves are our letter of recommendation, written on our hearts, known and read by all people. [3] And you show that you are a letter from Christ, delivered by us. It was written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God. It was not written on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts.

translationWords:

- praise
- letter, epistle
- heart
- Christ, Messiah
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul reminds them that he is not boasting as he tells them about what he has done through Christ.
- **Are we beginning to praise ourselves again?** - Paul uses this question to emphasize that they are not bragging about themselves. AT: “We are not beginning to praise ourselves again” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **We do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people, do we?** - Paul says this to express that the Corinthians already know about Paul and Timothy’s good reputation. The question prompts a negative answer. AT: “We certainly do not need letters of recommendation to you or from you, like some people do” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **letters of recommendation** - This is a letter that a person writes to introduce and give their approval of someone else.

- **You yourselves are our letter of recommendation** - Paul speaks of the Corinthians as if they are a letter of recommendation. That they have become believers serves to validate Paul's ministry to others. AT: "You yourselves are like our letter of recommendation" (See: Metaphor)
- **written on our hearts** - Here the word "hearts" refers to their thoughts and emotions. Possible meanings are 1) Paul and his coworkers are sure about the Corinthians being their letter of recommendation or 2) Paul and his coworkers care very deeply for the Corinthians.
- **written on our hearts** - This can be stated in active form with "Christ" as the implied subject. AT: "which Christ has written on our hearts" (See: Active or Passive)
- **known and read by all people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that all people can know and read" (See: Active or Passive)
- **you are a letter from Christ** - Paul clarifies that Christ is the one who has written the letter. AT: "you are a letter that Christ has written" (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **delivered by us** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that we delivered" (See: Active or Passive)
- **It was written not with ink ... on tablets of human hearts** - Paul clarifies that the Corinthians are like a spiritual letter, not like a letter that humans write with physical objects.
- **It was written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "It is not a letter that people wrote with ink but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote" (See: Active or Passive and Ellipsis)
- **It was not written on tablets of stone, but on tablets of human hearts** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "It is not a letter that people engraved on stone tablets but a letter that the Spirit of the living God wrote on tablets of human hearts" (See: Active or Passive and Ellipsis)
- **tablets of human hearts** - Paul speaks of their hearts as if they are flat pieces of stone or clay upon which people engraved letters. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3:4-6

UDB:

[4] This is how we trust God, because we are joined to Christ. [5] We are not able to do anything for God in our own strength, so we cannot claim to be able to. Instead, it is God who gives us all we need to serve him. [6] God gave us what we needed to be servants of the new covenant. This covenant does not get its strength from the law that was written down, but from the Spirit of God. The written letter of the law brings death, but the Spirit gives life.

ULB:

[4] And this is the confidence that we have in God through Christ. [5] We are not competent in ourselves to claim anything as coming from us. Instead, our competence is from God. [6] It is God who made us able to be servants of a new covenant. This is a covenant not of the letter but of the Spirit. For the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life.

translationWords:

- confidence, confident
- servant, slave, slavery
- new covenant
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **this is the confidence** - This refers to what Paul has just said. His confidence comes from knowing that the Corinthians are the validation of his ministry before God.
- **competent in ourselves** - "qualified in ourselves" or "sufficient in ourselves"
- **to claim anything as coming from us** - Here the word "anything" refers to anything pertaining to Paul's apostolic ministry. AT: "to claim that anything we have done in ministry comes from our own efforts" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **our competence is from God** - "God gives us our sufficiency"
- **a covenant not of the letter** - Here the word "letter" means letters of the alphabet and refers to words that people write down. The phrase alludes to the Old Testament law. AT: "a covenant not based on commands that men have written" (See: Synecdoche and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **but of the Spirit** - The Holy Spirit is the one who establishes God's covenant with people. AT: "but a covenant based on what the Spirit does" (See: Ellipsis)
- **the letter kills** - Paul speaks of the Old Testament law as a person who kills. Following that law leads to spiritual death. AT: "the written law leads to death" (See: Personification and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3:7-8

UDB:

[7] God's law brings death, and he wrote it on stone tablets, and he gave it to Moses. It came with the brilliant light that always shines where God is. And that glory shined on Moses' face; his face shined so brightly that the Israelites could not look at his face. That bright light slowly faded from his face. [8] How much more brightly does the ministry of the Spirit shine!

ULB:

[7] Now the service that produced death—engraved in letters on stones—came in such glory that the people of Israel could not look directly at Moses' face. This is because of the glory of his face, a glory that was fading. [8] How much more glorious will be the service that the Spirit does?

translationWords:

- glory, glorious
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Moses
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul contrasts the fading glory of the old covenant with the superiority and freedom of the new covenant. He contrasts the veil of Moses with the clarity of present revelation. The time of Moses was a less clear picture of what is now revealed.

- **Now the service that produced death ... came in such glory** - Paul emphasizes that although the law leads to death, it was still very glorious. (See: Irony)
- **the service that produced** - "the ministry of death." This refers to the Old Testament law that God gave through Moses. AT: "the ministry that causes death because it is based on the law" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **engraved in letters on stones** - "carved into stone with letters." This can be stated in active form. AT: "that God carved into stone with letters" (See: Active or Passive)
- **in such glory** - "in so much glory"
- **This is because** - "They could not look because"
- **How much more glorious will be the service that the Spirit does?** - Paul uses this question to emphasize that "the service that the Spirit does" must be more glorious than "the service that produced" because it leads to life. AT: "So the service that the Spirit does must be even more glorious" (See: Rhetorical Question)

- **the service that the Spirit does** - "the ministry of the Spirit." This refers to the new covenant, of which Paul is a minister. AT: "the ministry that gives life because it is based on the Spirit" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3:9-11

UDB:

[9] Even the law shined with God's brilliant light. But that brilliant light of the law can only bring death to everyone. So how very much more does his brilliant light shine in us when God makes us right with himself! [10] When the brilliant light of the law is compared with God's work of putting us right with himself, it is as if the law is not wonderful at all, because what replaced it is so much more wonderful! [11] So you can see that the law, which is passing away, was wonderful, but you can also see that what is replacing it will be even more wonderful; and it will last forever.

ULB:

[9] For if the service of condemnation had glory, how much more does the service of righteousness abound in glory! [10] For indeed, that which was once made glorious is no longer glorious in this respect, because of the glory that exceeds it. [11] For if that which was passing away had glory, how much more will what is permanent have glory!

translationWords:

- serve, service
- condemn, condemnation
- glory, glorious
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **the service of condemnation** - "the ministry of condemnation." This refers to the Old Testament law. AT: "the ministry that condemns people because it is based on the law" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **how much more does the service of righteousness abound in glory!** - Here the word "how" marks this phrase as an exclamation, not as a question. AT: "then the service of righteousness must abound in so much more glory!" (See: Exclamations)
- **the service of righteousness abound in glory** - Paul speaks of "the service of righteousness" as if it were an object that could produce or multiply another object. He means that "the service of righteousness" is far more glorious than the law, which also had glory. (See: Metaphor)
- **the service of righteousness** - "the ministry of righteousness." This refers to the new covenant, of which Paul is a minister. AT: "the ministry that makes people righteous because it is based on the Spirit" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **that which was once made glorious is no longer glorious ... because of the glory that exceeds it** - The Old Testament law no longer appears glorious when compared with the New Covenant, which is much more glorious.

- **that which was once made glorious** - This can be stated in active form. AT “the law which God once made glorious” (See: Active or Passive)
- **in this respect** - “in this way”
- **that which was passing away** - This refers to “the service of condemnation,” which Paul speaks of as if it were an object capable of disappearing. AT: “that which was becoming useless” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3:12-13

UDB:

12 Since we apostles trust in God for the future, we have great courage. 13 We are not like Moses, who put a veil over his face so the children of Israel would not have to look at the fading light from God.

ULB:

12 Since we have such confidence, we are very bold. 13 We are not like Moses, who put a veil over his face, so that the people of Israel were not able to look directly at the ending of a glory that was passing away.

translationWords:

- confidence, confident
- bold, boldly, boldness
- Moses
- veil
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **Since we have such confidence** - This refers to what Paul has just said. His confidence comes from knowing that the new covenant has an eternal glory.
- **the ending of a glory that was passing away** - The refers to the glory that shined on Moses' face. AT: "the glory on Moses' face as it faded away completely" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3:14-16

UDB:

14 Long ago, the children of Israel refused to believe God's message. Even today, when the old law is read, they wear that same veil. Only when we are joined with Christ does God take the veil away.
15 Yes, even today, whenever they read the law of Moses, it is as if they had a veil over their minds.
16 But when a person turns to the Lord, God removes that veil.

ULB:

14 But their minds were closed. Even until this very day the same veil remains on the reading of the old covenant. It is not opened up, because only in Christ is it done away with. 15 But even today, whenever Moses is read, a veil lies over their hearts. 16 But when a person turns to the Lord, the veil is lifted away.

translationWords:

- mind
- veil
- covenant
- Christ, Messiah
- Moses
- heart
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **But their minds were closed** - "But their minds were hardened." Paul speaks of the minds of the Israelite people as objects that could be closed or made hard. This expression means that they were unable to understand what they saw. AT: "But the Israelites could not understand what they saw" (See: Metaphor)
- **Even until this very day ... But even today** - These phrases refer to the time at which Paul was writing to the Corinthians.
- **the same veil remains on the reading of the old covenant** - Just as the Israelites could not see the glory on Moses' face because he covered his face with a veil, there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant. (See: Metaphor)
- **on the reading of the old covenant** - "when someone reads the old covenant" or "when they hear someone read the old covenant"
- **It is not opened up, because only in Christ is it done away with** - Here both occurrences of the word "it" refer to "the same veil." This can be stated in active form. AT: "No one removes the veil, because only in Christ does God remove it" (See: Active or Passive)

- **whenever Moses is read** - Here the word “Moses” refers to the Old Testament law. This can be stated in active form. AT: “whenever someone reads the Mosaic law” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)
- **a veil lies over their hearts** - Here the word “hearts” refers to the mind and thoughts. A spiritual veil covers their hearts, preventing them from being able to understand the old covenant. AT: “a veil lies over their minds” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)
- **the veil is lifted away** - This means they are now given the ability to understand. This can be stated in active form. AT: “God lifts the veil away” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 3:17-18

UDB:

17 Now the word “Lord” here means “the Spirit.” Where the Spirit of the Lord is, people become free. 18 But for all of us who believe, we look at him with no veil over our faces, and we reflect his brilliant light more and more. This is what the Lord does; and he is the Spirit.

ULB:

17 Now the Lord is the Spirit. Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom. 18 Now all of us, with unveiled faces, see the glory of the Lord. We are being transformed into the same glorious likeness from one degree of glory into another, just as from the Lord, who is the Spirit.

translationWords:

- Lord
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- free, freedom, liberty
- glory, glorious
- like, likeness

translationNotes:

- **Now all of us** - Here the word “us” refers to all believers, including Paul and the Corinthians. (See: Inclusive “We”)
- **with unveiled faces, see the glory of the Lord** - Unlike the Israelites who could not see God’s glory reflected on Moses’ face because he had covered it with a veil, there is nothing to prevent believers from seeing and understanding God’s glory. (See: Metaphor)
- **We are being transformed into the same glorious likeness** - The Spirit is changing believers to be glorious like him. This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Lord is transforming us into his same glorious likeness” (See: Active or Passive)
- **from one degree of glory into another** - “from one amount of glory to another amount of glory.” This means that the Spirit is constantly increasing the glory of believers.
- **just as from the Lord** - “just as this comes from the Lord”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 03 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 03 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins with the word “therefore,” which is connected to the teaching in the previous chapter. The awkward placement of the chapter division can cause confusion.

Special concepts in this chapter

Ministry

Paul has the ministry, or job, of telling people about Christ. He does not use trickery to get them to believe. If they do not understand, the problem is ultimately spiritual. (See: spirit, spiritual)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Light and Darkness

These are common images in the New Testament. Light is used here to indicate the revelation of God and his righteousness. Darkness describes sin and sin seeks to remain hidden from God. (See: light, righteous, righteousness, darkness and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Life and death

Life and death are not used in reference to physical life and death. Life represents the new life a Christian has in Jesus, while death represents the old way one lived prior to coming to faith in Jesus. (See: life, live, living, alive, death, die, dead and faith)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Hope

Paul uses a repeated pattern in a purposeful way. He makes a statement and then denies a seemingly opposite or contradictory statement or gives an exception. They function to give the reader hope in the midst of difficult circumstances. (See: hope)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 04:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 4:1-2

UDB:

[1] God gave us this responsibility to carry out, and he also had mercy on us. So we are not down-hearted. [2] We are careful not to do anything we would be ashamed of doing, and we have nothing to hide from anyone. We do not promise something that God will not give, and we do not twist God's message to make it say what we want. We proclaim only the truth. In this way, we present ourselves for you to judge us as we stand before God.

ULB:

4 [1] Therefore, because we have this ministry, and just as we have received mercy, we do not become discouraged. [2] Instead, we have renounced the ways that are shameful and hidden. We do not live by craftiness, and we do not mishandle the word of God. By presenting the truth, we recommend ourselves to everyone's conscience in the sight of God.

translationWords:

- minister, ministry
- receive
- mercy, merciful
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- life, live, living, alive
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- true, truth, come true
- conscience

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul writes that he is honest in his ministry by preaching Christ, not praising himself. He shows the death and the life of Jesus in how he lives so that life can work in the Corinthian believers.

- **we have this ministry** - Here the word "we" refers to Paul and his coworker, but not to the Corinthians. (See: Exclusive "We")
- **and just as we have received mercy** - This phrase explains how Paul and his coworkers "have this ministry." It is a gift that God has given to them through his mercy. AT: "because God has shown us mercy" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **we have renounced the ways that are shameful and hidden** - This means that that Paul and his coworkers refused to do "shameful and hidden" things. It does not mean that they had done these things in the past.

- **the ways that are shameful and hidden** - The word “hidden” describes the things that are “shameful.” AT: “the ways that are so shameful that people hide them” (See: Hendiadys)
- **live by craftiness** - “live by deception”
- **we do not mishandle the word of God** - This phrase uses two negative thoughts to express a positive thought. AT: “we use the word of God correctly” (See: Double Negatives)
- **we recommend ourselves to everyone’s conscience** - This means that they provide enough evidence for each person who hears them to decide whether they are right or wrong.
- **in the sight of God** - This refers to God’s presence. God’s understanding and approval of Paul’s truthfulness is referred to as God being able to see them. AT: “before God” or “with God as witness” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4:3-4

UDB:

[3] If the good news is hidden with a veil, it is hidden from those who are dying apart from God. [4] For them, the god of this world has made them blind to the truth because they do not trust the good news about the wonderful honor of Christ—for it is Christ who shows us what God is like.

ULB:

[3] But if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled only to those who are perishing. [4] In their case, the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds. As a result, they are not able to see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

translationWords:

- good news, gospel
- veil
- perish, perishing, perishable
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- world, worldly
- unbeliever, unbelief
- mind
- light
- glory, glorious
- Christ, Messiah
- image of God, image

translationNotes:

- **But if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled only to those who are perishing** - This refers back to 3:14-16, where Paul explained that there is a spiritual veil that prevents people from understanding when they read the old covenant. In the same way, people are not able to understand the gospel. (See: Metaphor)
- **if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "if a veil covers our gospel, that veil covers it" (See: Active or Passive)
- **our gospel** - "the gospel that we preach"
- **the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds** - Paul speaks of their minds as if they had eyes, and their inability to understand as their minds being unable to see. AT: "the god of this world has prevented unbelievers from understanding" (See: Metaphor)
- **the god of this world** - "the god who rules this world." This phrase refers to Satan.

- **they are not able to see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ** - As the Israelites could not see God's glory that shined on Moses' face because he covered it with a veil (see 3:13), unbelievers are not able to see Christ's glory that shines in the gospel. This means that they are unable to understand "the gospel of the glory of Christ" (See: Metaphor)
- **the light of the gospel** - "the light that comes from the gospel"
- **the gospel of the glory of Christ** - "the gospel about the Christ's glory"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4:5-6

UDB:

5 We do not proclaim ourselves to you as people who can rescue you from any evil. Instead, we proclaim Christ Jesus as our Master, and we are your servants because we are joined to Jesus. 6 For God is the one who said, "Light will shine out of the darkness." He has shone his light into our hearts, so that when we trust in Jesus Christ, we can learn how wonderful God is.

ULB:

5 For we do not proclaim ourselves, but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants for Jesus' sake. 6 For God is the one who said, "Light will shine out of darkness." He has shone in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the presence of Jesus Christ.

translationWords:

- proclaim, proclamation
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Lord
- servant, slave, slavery
- God
- heart
- light
- know, knowledge, make known
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants** - You can supply the verb for these phrases. AT: "but we proclaim Christ Jesus as Lord, and we proclaim ourselves as your servants" (See: Ellipsis)
- **for Jesus' sake** - "because of Jesus"
- **Light will shine out of darkness** - With this sentence, Paul refers to God creating light, as described in the book of Genesis.
- **He has shone ... to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God** - Here the word "light" refers to the ability to understand. Just as God created light, he also creates understanding for believers. AT: "He has shone ... to enable us to understand the glory of God" (See: Metaphor)
- **in our hearts** - Here the word "hearts" refers to the mind and thoughts. AT: "in our minds" (See: Metonymy)

- **the light of the knowledge of the glory of God** - “the light, which is the knowledge of the glory of God”
- **the glory of God in the presence of Jesus Christ** - “the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.” Just as God’s glory shone upon Moses’ face (see 3:7), it also shines upon Jesus face. This means that when Paul preaches the gospel, people are able to see and understand the message about God’s glory. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4:7-10

UDB:

7 Now we carry these precious gifts from God in our bodies, which are fragile like clay pots. There can be no mistake about where our strength comes from: it comes only from God. 8 We have suffered many different kinds of trouble, but they have not destroyed us. We may be confused about what we should do, but we never give up. 9 Some people try to harm us, but we are never alone; it is as if some people knocked us down, but we always get up again. 10 We are often in danger of dying, as Jesus died, but our bodies will live again, because Jesus is alive.

ULB:

7 But we have this treasure in jars of clay, so that it is clear that the exceedingly great power belongs to God and not to us. 8 We are afflicted in every way, but not overwhelmed. We are perplexed but not filled with despair. 9 We are persecuted but not forsaken. We are struck down but not destroyed. 10 We always carry in our body the death of Jesus, so that the life of Jesus also may be shown in our bodies.

translationWords:

- power, powers
- afflict, affliction
- persecute, persecution
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **But we have** - Here the word “we” refers to Paul and his coworkers, but not to the Corinthians. (See: Exclusive “We”)
- **we have this treasure in jars of clay** - Paul speaks of the gospel as if it were a treasure and their bodies as if they were breakable jars made out of clay. This emphasizes that they are of little value compared to the worth of the gospel that they preach. (See: Metaphor)
- **so that it is clear** - “so that it is clear to people” or “so that people clearly know”
- **We are afflicted in every way** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People afflict us in every way” (See: Active or Passive)
- **We are persecuted but not forsaken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People persecute us but God does not forsake us” (See: Active or Passive)
- **We are struck down but not destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People strike us down but do not destroy us” (See: Active or Passive)

- **We are struck down** - “We are hurt badly”
- **We always carry in our body the death of Jesus** - Paul speaks of his sufferings as if they are an experience of the death of Jesus. AT: “We are often in danger of dying, as Jesus died” (UDB) or “We always suffer in such a way that we experience the death of Jesus” (See: Metaphor)
- **the life of Jesus also may be shown in our bodies** - Possible meanings are 1) “our bodies will live again, because Jesus is alive” (UDB) or 2) “the spiritual life that Jesus gives also may be shown in our bodies.”
- **the life of Jesus also may be shown in our bodies** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “other people may see the life of Jesus in our bodies” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4:11-12

UDB:

11 For those of us who are alive, God is always leading us to face death because we are joined to Jesus, so that when people look at us, they can know that Jesus is alive. 12 So you can see that death is doing its work in us, but that life is working in you.

ULB:

11 We who are alive are always carrying around in our body the death of Jesus, so that the life of Jesus may be shown in our human bodies. 12 So death is at work in us, but life is at work in you.

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **We who are alive are always carrying around in our body the death of Jesus** - Carrying the death of Jesus represents being in danger of dying because of being loyal to Jesus. AT: "For those of us who are alive, God is always leading us to face death because we are joined to Jesus" (UDB) or "People are always causing us who are alive to be in danger of dying because we are joined to Jesus" (See: Metaphor)
- **so that the life of Jesus may be shown in our human bodies** - God wants Jesus' life be shown in us. Possible meanings are 1) "our bodies will live again, because Jesus is alive" (UDB) or 2) "the spiritual life that Jesus gives also may be shown in our bodies." See how you translated this phrase in 4:10.
- **so that the life of Jesus may be shown in our human bodies** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "so other people may see the life of Jesus in our bodies." See how you translated this phrase in 4:10. (See: Active or Passive)
- **death is at work in us, but life is at work in you** - Paul speaks of death and life as if they are persons who can work. This means that they are always in danger of physical death so that the Corinthians can have spiritual life. (See: Personification)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4:13-15

UDB:

13 We trust in God, just as the scriptures say: "I trust in God; this is why I speak." We also trust in God, and we also speak about what he has done for us. 14 We know that God, who raised up the Lord Jesus from the dead, will also raise us up from the dead with him, and that Jesus will take us along with you, and take us to be where God is. 15 All that I have suffered is to help you, so that more and more people can know how God loves them freely, and so that they may praise him more and more.

ULB:

13 But we have the same spirit of faith according to that which was written: "I believed, and so I spoke." We also believe, and so we also speak. 14 We know that the one who raised the Lord Jesus will also raise us with Jesus. We know that he will bring us with you into his presence. 15 Everything is for your sake so that, as grace is spread to many people, thanksgiving may increase to the glory of God.

translationWords:

- spirit, spiritual
- faith
- written
- believe, believe in, belief
- know, knowledge, make known
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- grace, gracious
- glory, glorious
- God

translationNotes:

- **the same spirit of faith** - "the same attitude of faith." Here the word "spirit" refers a person's attitude and temperament.
- **according to that which was written** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "as the one who wrote these words" (See: Active or Passive)
- **I believed, and so I spoke** - This is a quote from the Psalms.
- **the one who raised the Lord Jesus** - Here the words "the one" refer to God. AT: "God who raised the Lord Jesus from death to life" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- **will bring us with you** - The word “us” excludes the Corinthians. (See: Exclusive “We”)
- **Everything is for your sake** - Here the word “Everything” refers to all of the sufferings that Paul has described in previous verses.
- **as grace is spread to many people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as God spreads his grace to many people” (See: Active or Passive)
- **thanksgiving may increase** - Paul speaks of thanksgiving as if it were an object that could become larger by itself. AT: “more and more people may give thanks” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 4:16-18

UDB:

16 We are not discouraged. When our bodies are dying a little each day outwardly, God is making us new every day on in the inside. 17 For these short, easy times of suffering are getting us ready for the day when God will make us wonderful forever, wonderful in ways that no one can measure or explain. 18 For we are not waiting for things that we can see, but for the things we cannot see. The things that we can now see are temporary, but the things we cannot see, they last forever.

ULB:

16 So we do not become discouraged. Even though outwardly we are wasting away, inwardly we are being renewed day by day. 17 For this momentary, light affliction is preparing us for an eternal weight of glory that exceeds all measurement. 18 For we are not watching for things that are seen, but for things that are unseen. The things which we can see are temporary, but the things that are unseen are eternal.

translationWords:

- afflict, affliction
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul writes that the Corinthian difficulties are minor and do not last long when compared to the unseen eternal things.
- **So we do not become discouraged** - This can be stated as a positive. AT: “So we remain confident” (See: Double Negatives)
- **outwardly we are wasting away** - This refers to their physical bodies decaying and dying. AT: “our physical bodies are getting weak and dying” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **inwardly we are being renewed day by day** - This refers to their inward, spiritual lives getting stronger. AT: “our spiritual beings are being strengthened day by day” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **inwardly we are being renewed day by day** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God is renewing our inward being more each day” (See: Active or Passive)
- **this momentary, light affliction is preparing us for an eternal weight of glory** - Paul speaks of his sufferings and the glory that God will give him as if they were objects that can be weighed. The glory far outweighs the suffering. (See: Metaphor)

- **that exceeds all measurement** - The glory that Paul will experience is so heavy that no one can measure it. This can be stated in active form. AT: “that no one can measure” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)
- **things that are seen ... things that are unseen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “things that we can see ... things that we cannot see” (See: Active or Passive)
- **but for things that are unseen** - You can supply the verb for this phrase. AT “but we are watching for things that are unseen” (See: Ellipsis)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 04 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 04 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

New bodies in heaven

Paul knows, when he dies, he will receive a much better body. Because of this, he is not afraid of being killed for preaching the Good News. So he tells others that they too can be reconciled to God. Christ will take away their sin and give them his righteousness. (See: good news, gospel, reconcile, reconciliation, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and righteous, righteousness)

New creation

The new creation and the old is probably a reference to Paul's illustrations of the old and new self. These concepts are also equivalent to the old and new man. The term "old" probably not a reference to the sinful nature that a person is born with, but is a reference to the old way of living or the Christian's former bondage to sin. The "new creation" is the new nature or new life that is given to a person after they come to faith in Christ. (See: faith)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Home

The Christian's home is no longer in the world. A Christian's home is in heaven. This is a common metaphor used in Scripture. The use of this imagery in this chapter emphasizes the temporariness of the Christian's circumstances. It gives hope to those who are suffering. (See: heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly, Metaphor and hope)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The message of reconciliation"

This is a reference to the gospel. It is a call for those who are hostile to God, to repent and be reconciled to him. (See: repent, repentance and reconcile, reconciliation)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 05:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 5:1-3

UDB:

[1] We know that these bodies are only temporary dwelling places, like tents that do not last very long. But we know that when we die, God gives us a permanent place in which we will live, a body that lasts forever, a body that God has made. [2] While we live in our physical bodies, we groan with longing for the bodies we will have when we will live with God— [3] because when God clothes us in our new bodies, that will be our covering, like clothing.

ULB:

5 [1] We know that if the earthly dwelling that we live in is destroyed, we have a building from God. It is a house not made by human hands, but an eternal house, in heaven. [2] For in this tent we groan, longing to be clothed with our heavenly dwelling. [3] We long for this because by putting it on we will not be found to be naked.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- tent
- groan
- clothe, clothed

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues by contrasting believers' earthly bodies to the heavenly ones God will give.
- **if the earthly dwelling that we live in is destroyed, we have a building from God** - Paul speaks of his physical body as if it were a temporary "earthly dwelling" and of the resurrection body that God will give as if it were a permanent "building" (See: Metaphor)
- **if the earthly dwelling that we live in is destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "if people destroy the earthly dwelling that we live in" or "if people kill our bodies" (See: Active or Passive)
- **It is a house not made by human hands** - This refers to the "building from God." This can be stated in active form. AT: "It is a house that humans have not made" (See: Active or Passive and Synecdoche)

- **in this tent we groan** - The word “tent” refers to “the earthly dwelling that we live in.” The word groan is a sound that a person makes when they eagerly desire to have something that is good.
- **longing to be clothed with our heavenly dwelling** - The words “our heavenly dwelling” refer to the “building from God.” Paul speaks of the resurrection body as if it were both a building and a piece of clothing that a person can put on. (See: Metaphor)
- **by putting it on** - “by putting on our heavenly dwelling”
- **we will not be found to be naked** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “we will not be naked” or “God will not find us naked” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:4-5

UDB:

4 For we live in these bodies that one day will die, and we long for the day when we lay aside these bodies. Not that we are eager to die, but we are eager to be clothed with our eternal bodies, just like the saying that says, “All that dies, will be swallowed up by life.” 5 God himself prepares our new bodies for us, and he guarantees that we will receive them by giving us his Spirit.

ULB:

4 For indeed while we are in this tent, we groan, being burdened. We do not want to be unclothed. Instead, we want to be clothed, so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life. 5 The one who prepared us for this very thing is God, who gave us the Spirit as a pledge of what is to come.

translationWords:

- tent
- burden
- clothe, clothed
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- pledge

translationNotes:

- **while we are in this tent** - Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a “tent.” (See: Metaphor)
- **in this tent, we groan** - The word “tent” refers to “the earthly dwelling that we live in.” The word groan is a sound that a person makes when they eagerly desire to have something that is good. See how you translated this in 5:2.
- **being burdened** - Paul refers to the difficulties that the physical body experiences as if they were heavy objects that are difficult to carry. (See: Metaphor)
- **We do not want to be unclothed ... we want to be clothed** - Paul speaks of the body as if it were clothing. Here “to be unclothed” refers to the death of the physical body; “to be clothed” refers to having the resurrection body that God will give. (See: Metaphor)
- **to be unclothed** - “to be without clothes” or “to be naked”
- **so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life** - Paul speaks of life as if it were an animal that eats “what is mortal.” The physical body that will die will be replaced by a resurrection body that will live forever. (See: Metaphor)

- **so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that life may swallow up what is mortal" (See: Active or Passive)
- **who gave us the Spirit as a pledge of what is to come** - The Spirit is spoken of as if he was a partial downpayment toward eternal life. See how you translated a similar phrase in 1:22. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:6-8

UDB:

[6] So you should always be certain that as long as we live in our bodies on the earth, we are away from Lord, who is in heaven [7] (we live our lives by trusting in him, and not by trusting in what we can see). [8] Because we have put our trust in him, we would much rather give up our present bodies so we could be at home with the Lord.

ULB:

[6] Therefore always be confident. Be aware that while we are at home in the body, we are away from the Lord. [7] For we walk by faith, not by sight. [8] So we have confidence. We would rather be away from the body and at home with the Lord.

translationWords:

- confidence, confident
- Lord
- walk
- faith

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Because believers will have a new body and have the Holy Spirit as a pledge, Paul reminds them to live by faith that they may please the Lord. He continues by reminding them to persuade others because 1) believers will appear at the judgment seat of Christ and 2) because of love for Christ who died for believers.
- **while we are at home in the body** - Paul speaks of the physical body as if it were a place where a person dwells. AT: “while we are living in this earthly body” (See: Metaphor)
- **we are away from the Lord** - “we are not at home with the Lord” or “we are not in heaven with the Lord”
- **we walk by faith, not by sight** - “we live according to faith, not according to what we see”
- **We would rather be away from the body** - Here the word “body” refers to the physical body.
- **at home with the Lord** - “at home with the Lord in heaven”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:9-10

UDB:

[9] Therefore we make it our goal to obey him, whether we are here or in heaven. [10] For we will all stand before Christ when he sits as the judge of all. He will judge what we did when we were in this life. Christ will give us what we deserve, and he will judge what was good or bad.

ULB:

[9] So we make it our goal, whether we are at home or away, to please him. [10] For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may receive what is due for the things done in the body, whether for good or for bad.

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- Christ, Messiah
- good, goodness

translationNotes:

- **whether we are at home or away** - The word “the Lord” may be supplied from the previous verses. AT: “whether we are at home with the Lord or away from the Lord” (See: Ellipsis)
- **to please him** - “to please the Lord”
- **before the judgment seat of Christ** - “before Christ to be judged”
- **each one may receive what is due** - “each person may receive what he deserves”
- **the things done in the body** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the things he has done in the physical body” (See: Active or Passive)
- **whether for good or for bad** - “whether those things were good or bad”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:11-12

UDB:

11 Therefore we know what it is to honor the Lord, so we make sure to tell people what kind of God he is. God knows what kind of people we are, and I expect that you also understand whether we are doing good or evil. 12 We are not trying to prove again that we are genuine servants of God. We only want you to know what kind of people we are, and to give you a reason to be proud of us. We do this, so that you can answer those who praise their own actions, but do not care about what they really are in their inner being.

ULB:

11 Therefore, knowing the fear of the Lord, we persuade people. What we are is clearly seen by God. I hope that it is also clear to your conscience. 12 We are not trying to persuade you again to view us as sincere. Instead, we are giving you a reason to be proud of us, so you may have an answer for those who boast about appearances but not about what is in the heart.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Lord
- God
- conscience
- proud, pride, prideful
- boast, boastful
- heart

translationNotes:

- **knowing the fear of the Lord** - "knowing what it means to fear the Lord"
- **we persuade people** - Possible meanings are 1) "we persuade people of the truth of the gospel" or 2) "we persuade people that we are legitimate apostles." (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **What we are is clearly seen by God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God clearly sees what kind of people we are" (See: Active or Passive)
- **that it is also clear to your conscience** - "that you are also convinced of it"
- **so you may have an answer** - "so you may have something to say to"
- **those who boast about appearances but not about what is in the heart** - Here the word "appearances" refers to outward expressions of things like ability and status. The word "heart" refers to the inward character of a person. AT: "those who boast about outward appearances ... not what a person is like on the inside" (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:13-15

UDB:

13 If people think we are crazy, well, we are serving God. But if we are in our right minds, it is to help you. 14 Our love for Christ drives us on. We are sure of this: Christ died for all, therefore we all have died with him. 15 Christ died for all, so that those who live should not live for themselves, but should live for Christ, who died for their sins; and he is the one whom God raised from the dead.

ULB:

13 For if we are out of our minds, it is for God. And if we are in our right minds, it is for your sake. 14 For the love of Christ compels us, because we are certain of this: that one person died for all, and that therefore all have died. 15 And Christ died for all, so that those who live should live no longer for themselves. Instead, they should live for him who died and was raised.

translationWords:

- mind
- God
- love
- Christ, Messiah
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

translationNotes:

- **if we are out of our minds ... if we are in our right minds** - Paul is speaking about the way others think of him and his coworkers. AT: “if people think we are crazy ... if people think we are sane” (See: Idiom)
- **the love of Christ** - Possible meanings are 1) “Our love for Christ” (UDB) or 2) “Christ’s love for us.”
- **died for all** - “died for all people”
- **him who died and was raised** - Here the word “him” refers to Christ. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Christ, who died and whom God raised” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes

- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:16-17

UDB:

16 Since we live no longer for ourselves, we judge no one according to the way the unbelievers judge. We once even viewed Christ by these human standards. But as Christians, now we judge no one like this. 17 When anyone is joined with Christ and trusts in him, he becomes a new person. Everything from the past is gone—See!— God makes everything in you new.

ULB:

16 For this reason, from now on we do not judge anyone according to human standards, even though we once regarded Christ in this way. But now we do not judge anyone in this way any longer. 17 Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old things have passed away. See, they have become new.

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- create, creation, Creator

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Because of Christ's love and death, we are not to judge by human standards. We are appointed to teach others how to be united with and have peace with God through Christ's death and receive God's righteousness through Christ.
- **For this reason** - This refers to what Paul has just said about living for Christ instead of living for self.
- **he is a new creation** - Paul speaks of the person who believes in Christ as if God had created a new person. AT: "he is a new person" (See: Metaphor)
- **The old things have passed away** - Here "the old things" refers to the things that characterized a person before they trusted in Christ.
- **See** - The word "See" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:18-19

UDB:

18 All these gifts come from God. He made peace with us so that we are no longer enemies of God. Now we have peace with God through the cross of Christ. Also, God has given us the responsibility of announcing that he is bringing people and himself together. 19 That message brings God and people together and is how God made peace with the world by what Christ did. God is not applying their sins to their account. Instead, Christ has taken our sins away and has given us this message that makes peace and brings God and people together.

ULB:

18 All these things are from God. He reconciled us to himself through Christ, and has given us the ministry of reconciliation. 19 That is, in Christ God is reconciling the world to himself, not counting their trespasses against them. He is entrusting to us the message of reconciliation.

translationWords:

- God
- reconcile, reconciliation
- Christ, Messiah
- minister, ministry
- world, worldly
- trespass

translationNotes:

- **All these things** - "God has done all these things." This refers to what Paul has just said in the previous verse about new things replacing old things.
- **the ministry of reconciliation** - This can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "the ministry of reconciling people to him" (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **That is** - "This means"
- **in Christ God is reconciling the world to himself** - Here the word "world" refers to people in the world. AT: "in Christ, God is reconciling mankind to himself" (See: Metonymy)
- **He is entrusting to us the message of reconciliation** - God has given Paul the responsibility to spread the message that God is reconciling people to himself.
- **the message of reconciliation** - "the message about reconciliation"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 5:20-21

UDB:

[20] So God has appointed us to represent Christ. God pleads with you through us. So we plead with you on Christ's behalf: through Christ, let him make peace with you and bring you to himself. [21] God made Christ the offering for sin—the one who never sinned—so that when we trust in Christ and believe in him, God makes us right with himself.

ULB:

[20] So we are appointed as representatives of Christ, as though God were making his appeal through us. We plead with you, for the sake of Christ: "Be reconciled to God!" [21] He made Christ become the sacrifice for our sin. He is the one who never sinned. He did this so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.

translationWords:

- appoint, appointed
- Christ, Messiah
- God
- reconcile, reconciliation
- sacrifice, offering
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **we are appointed as representatives of Christ** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God has appointed us as Christ's representatives" (See: Active or Passive)
- **representatives of Christ** - "those who speak for Christ"
- **Be reconciled to God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Let God reconcile you to himself" (See: Active or Passive)
- **He made Christ become the sacrifice for our sin** - "God made Christ become the sacrifice for our sin"
- **our sin ... we might become** - Here the words "our" and "we" are inclusive and refer to all believers. (See: Inclusive "We")
- **He is the one who never sinned** - "Christ is the one who never sinned"
- **He did this ... the righteousness of God in him** - "God did this ... the righteousness of God in Christ"
- **so that we might become the righteousness of God in him** - The phrase "the righteousness of God" refers to the righteousness that God requires and which comes from God. AT: "so

that we might have God's righteousness in us through Christ" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 05 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 05 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 6:2, 16, 17-18 which are quotations from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Servants

Christians are said to be servants of God. This is because they are called to serve God in their life no matter the circumstances. This holds true even if one has very challenging circumstances.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Contrasts

Paul uses four pairs of contrasts: righteousness verses lawlessness, light verses darkness, Christ verses Satan and the temple of God verses idols. These contrasts are intended to differentiate between Christians and non-Christians. (See: righteous, righteousness, light and darkness)

Light and Darkness

These are common images in the New Testament. Light is used here to indicate the revelation of God and his righteousness. Darkness describes sin and sin seeks to remain hidden from God. (See: light, righteous, righteousness, darkness and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses a series of rhetorical questions to teach his readers. All of these questions make essentially the same point: Christians should not intimately fellowship with those who live in sin. These questions are repeated for emphasis. (See: Rhetorical Question and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

We

It is likely that Paul's usage of the pronoun "we" represents at least Timothy and himself. It is possible that it may also include other people.

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 06:1-3**

2 Corinthians 6:1-3

UDB:

[1] We work together, and we beg you not to receive the gift of God's love in a way that makes no difference for you. [2] For God said,

> "At a time when I displayed my loving mercy, I listened to you,
>
> And when I completed the work of my salvation, I helped you."

Look, this is the day when God is having mercy on you; this is the day that he is rescuing you.

[3] We certainly do not want to give anyone reason to do wrong, because we want no one to accuse us of preaching the good news in order to encourage evil doing.

ULB:

6 [1] And so, working together, we beg you not to receive the grace of God to no effect. [2] For he says,

> "In a favorable time I paid attention to you,
>
> and in the day of salvation I helped you."

Look, now is the favorable time. Look, now is the day of salvation. [3] We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, for we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute.

translationWords:

- beg, beggar
- receive
- grace, gracious
- God
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- salvation
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- minister, ministry

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul summarizes how working together for God is supposed to be.
- **General Information:** - In verse 2, Paul quotes a portion from the prophet Isaiah.
- **working together** - Paul is implying that he and Timothy are working with God. AT: "working together with God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- **we beg you not to receive the grace of God to no effect** - Paul pleads with them to allow the grace of God to be effective in their lives. This can be stated in positive terms. AT: "we beg you to make use of the grace that you have received from God" (See: Double Negatives)
- **For he says** - "For God says." This introduces a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. AT: "For God says in scripture" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **Look** - The word "Look" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone** - Paul speaks of anything that would prevent a person from trusting in Christ as if it were a physical object over which that person trips and falls. AT: "We do not want to do anything that will prevent people from believing our message" (See: Metaphor)
- **we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute** - The word "disrepute" refers to people speaking badly about Paul's ministry. This can be stated in active form. AT: "we do not want anyone to be able to speak badly about our ministry" (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 06 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 06 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 6:4-7

UDB:

[4] We have proved again and again that we are God's true servants. We endure great suffering, we face with courage people who hurt us, and we live through hard times. [5] People have beaten us very badly; others have locked us up in prisons; we were the cause for people to riot; we have done hard physical labor; we have passed many long nights without sleep, and we have often gone with very little food. [6] But in all this, our lives are pure, our knowledge is deep, and we are able to wait until God ends our suffering. We know how kind Christ is to us; we are filled with the Holy Spirit, and we love others. [7] We live according to God's true Word, and we have God's power. By means of Christ, God has put us right with himself. This is the truth that we continuously believe; it is like armor that a soldier wears, and like weapons for both of his hands.

ULB:

[4] Instead, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God's servants. We are his servants in much endurance, affliction, distress, hardship, [5] beatings, imprisonments, riots, in hard work, in sleepless nights, in hunger, [6] in purity, knowledge, patience, kindness, in the Holy Spirit, in genuine love. [7] We are his servants in the word of truth, in the power of God. We have the armor of righteousness for the right hand and for the left.

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- endure, endurance
- afflict, affliction
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- pure, purify, purification
- know, knowledge, make known
- patient, patience
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- love
- word of truth
- power, powers
- armor
- righteous, righteousness
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - When Paul uses "we" here, he is referring to himself and Timothy. (See: Exclusive "We")

- **we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God's servants** - "We prove that we are God's servants by all that we do"
- **We are his servants in much endurance ... in sleepless nights, in hunger** - Paul mentions various difficult situations in which they proved that they are God's servants.
- **in purity ... in genuine love** - Paul lists several moral virtues that they maintained in difficult situations that proved that they are God's servants.
- **We are his servants in the word of truth, in the power of God** - Their dedication to preach the gospel in the power of God proves that they are God's servants.
- **in the word of truth** - "in preaching God's true word"
- **We have the armor of righteousness for the right hand and for the left** - Paul speaks of their righteousness as if it is weapons that they use to fight spiritual battles. (See: Metaphor)
- **the armor of righteousness** - "righteousness as our armor" or "righteousness as our weapons"
- **for the right hand and for the left** - Possible meanings are 1) that there is a weapon in one hand and a shield in the other or 2) that they are completely equipped for battle, able to fend off attacks from any direction.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 06 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 06 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 6:8-10

UDB:

[8] Sometimes people honor us; at other times, they dishonor us. Sometimes they say many evil things about us; at other times, they praise us. They accuse us of lying, even though we tell the truth. [9] We live like persons whom nobody knows, but some people know us very well. Some try to kill us for announcing the message about Christ, even though no one legally ever condemns us to death. [10] We live with great sorrow but we always rejoice. We live as some of the poorest people, but we have the treasure of the good news that makes many rich. You can see that we own nothing, but the truth is that all things belong to us.

ULB:

[8] We work in honor and dishonor, in slander and praise. We are accused of being deceitful and yet we are truthful. [9] We work as if we were unknown and we are still well known. We work as dying and—see!—we are still living. We work as being punished for our actions but not as condemned to death. [10] We work as sorrowful, but we are always rejoicing. We work as poor, but we are making many rich. We work as having nothing and yet as possessing all things.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- dishonor, dishonorable
- slander, slanderer
- praise
- accuse, accusation, accuser
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- true, truth, come true
- punish, punishment
- condemn, condemnation
- death, die, dead
- rejoice
- possess, possession

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Paul lists several extremes of how people think about him and his ministry. (See: Merism)
- **We are accused of being deceitful** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People accuse us of being deceitful” (See: Active or Passive)

- **as if we were unknown and we are still well known** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "as if people did not know us and yet people still know us well" (See: Active or Passive)
- **see!** - The word "See" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **We work as being punished for our actions but not as condemned to death** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "We work as if people are punishing us for our actions but not as if they have condemned us to death" (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 06 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 06 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 6:11-13

UDB:

11 We have spoken to you very openly and honestly, fellow believers at Corinth. We have freely shown you that we love you. 12 We are not the ones holding back, but you seem to be reluctant to show that you love us. 13 It would be a fair exchange—I am speaking as to children—for you to love us in return.

ULB:

11 We have spoken the whole truth to you, Corinthians, and our heart is wide open. 12 Your hearts are not restrained by us, but you are restrained by your own feelings. 13 Now in fair exchange—I speak as to children—open your hearts wide.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- Corinth, Corinthians
- heart
- children, child

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul encourages the believers at Corinth to be separated from idols and live clean lives for God.
- **spoken the whole truth to you** - “spoken honestly to you”
- **our heart is wide open** - Paul speaks of his great affection for the Corinthians as having a heart that is open. AT: “we love you very much” (See: Metaphor)
- **Your hearts are not restrained by us, but you are restrained by your own feelings** - Paul speaks of the Corinthians lack of love for him as if their hearts were being squeezed into a tight space. (See: Metaphor)
- **Your hearts are not restrained by us** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “We have not restrained your hearts” or “We have not given you any reason to stop loving us” (See: Active or Passive)
- **you are restrained by your own feelings** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “your own feelings are restraining you” or “you have stopped loving us for your own reasons” (See: Active or Passive)
- **in fair exchange** - “as a proper response”
- **I speak as to children** - Paul addresses the Corinthians as his spiritual children. AT: “I speak as if I were your father” (See: Metaphor)

- **open your hearts wide** - Paul urges the Corinthians to love him as he has loved them. AT: “love us much as we have loved you” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 06 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 06 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 6:14-16

UDB:

14 Do not work in unsuitable ways with people who do not trust Christ. What do people who live by God's measure and rules have in common with those who break his laws and do what they want? Darkness and light cannot be together. 15 How can Christ agree in any way with the demon Beliar? What does a person who trusts in God have in common with another person who does not trust in God? 16 How right would it be to bring pagan idols into the temple of God? For we are the temple of the living God, just as God said:

> "I will have my home among my people.
>
> I will live my life among them.
>
> I will be their God
>
> and they will be my people."

ULB:

14 Do not be tied together with unbelievers. For what association does righteousness have with lawlessness? And what fellowship does light have with darkness? 15 What agreement can Christ have with Beliar? Or what share does a believer have together with an unbeliever? 16 And what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols? For we are the temple of the living God, just as God said:

> "I will dwell among them and walk among them.
>
> I will be their God,
>
> and they will be my people."

translationWords:

- unbeliever, unbelief
- righteous, righteousness
- lawless, lawlessness
- fellowship
- light
- darkness
- Christ, Messiah
- believer
- temple
- idol, idolatrous
- life, live, living, alive
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verse 16, Paul paraphrases portions from several Old Testament prophets: Moses, Zechariah, Amos, and possibly others.
- **Do not be tied together with unbelievers** - This can be stated in positive terms. AT: "Only be tied together with believers" (See: Double Negatives)
- **be tied together with** - Paul speaks of working together toward a common purpose as if it were two animals tied together to pull a plow or cart. AT: "team up with" or "have a close relationship with" (See: Metaphor)
- **For what association does righteousness have with lawlessness?** - This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. AT: "For righteousness can have no association with lawlessness" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **And what fellowship does light have with darkness?** - Paul asks this question to emphasize that light and darkness cannot coexist since light dispels darkness. The words "light" and "darkness" refer to the moral and spiritual qualities of believers and unbelievers. AT: "And light can have no fellowship with darkness" (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)
- **What agreement can Christ have with Beliar?** - This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. AT: "There is no agreement between Christ and Beliar" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **Beliar** - This is another name for the devil. (See: How to Translate Names)
- **Or what share does a believer have together with an unbeliever?** - This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. AT: "A believer shares nothing in common with an unbeliever" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **And what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols?** - This is a rhetorical question that anticipates a negative answer. AT: "There is no agreement between the temple of God and idols" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **we are the temple of the living God** - Paul refers to all Christians as forming a temple for God to dwell in. AT: "we are like a temple where the living God dwells" (See: Metaphor and Inclusive "We")

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 06 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 06 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 6:17-18

UDB:

17 The scriptures therefore say:

> ”Come out from among the unbelievers
> and be separate from them,” says the Lord,
> ”Do not handle anything that makes you filthy and unable to worship me;
> and I will open my arms and welcome you.

ULB:

17 Therefore,

> ”Come out from among them,
> and be set apart,” says the Lord.
> ”Touch no unclean thing,
> and I will welcome you.
> 18 I will be a Father to you,
> and you will be my sons and daughters,”

says the Lord Almighty.

translationWords:

- set apart
- Lord
- unclean
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- son, son of
- Almighty

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Paul quotes portions from the Old Testament prophets, Isaiah and Ezekiel.
- **be set apart** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “set yourselves apart” or “allow me to set you apart” (See: Active or Passive)
- **Touch no unclean thing** - This can be stated in positive terms. AT: “Touch only things that are clean” (See: Double Negatives)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 06 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 06 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter has a very abrupt change. In 7:2-4, Paul finishes his defense. He then talks about Titus' return and the comfort it brought.

Special concepts in this chapter

Clean and unclean

Christians are "clean" in the sense that they are in a right relationship with God, and they do not need to be concerned with being clean according the law of Moses. Ungodly living can still make a Christian unclean. (See: clean, cleanse, law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness and unclean)

Sadness and sorrow

Different terms for emotions can have great differences in meaning. The terms "sad" and "sorrow" in this chapter indicates that the Corinthians were upset to the point of repentance. (See: repent, repentance)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

We

It is likely that Paul's usage of the pronoun "we" represents at least Timothy and himself. It is possible that it may also include other people.

Original situation

This chapter discusses in detail a previous situation. Although some aspects of this situation can be assumed given the information in this chapter, it is best to leave this type of implicit information untranslated. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 07:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 7:1

UDB:

[1] Dear ones, since God has promised to do these things for us, we should stop doing anything with our bodies or minds that keeps us from worshiping God. Let us keep trying to avoid sinning; let us keep honoring God and trembling in his presence.

ULB:

7

[1] Loved ones, since we have these promises let us cleanse ourselves of everything that makes us unclean in our body and spirit. Let us pursue holiness in the fear of God.

translationWords:

- promise
- clean, cleanse
- unclean
- spirit, spiritual
- holy, holiness
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- God

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to remind them to be separated from sin and to seek holiness purposefully.
- **Loved ones** - “You whom I love” or “Dear friends”
- **let us cleanse ourselves** - Here Paul is saying to stay away from any form of sin that would affect one’s relationship with God.
- **Let us pursue holiness** - “Let us strive to be holy”
- **in the fear of God** - “out of deep respect for God”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7:2-4

UDB:

[2] Open your hearts to us! No matter what you may have heard about us, we have not wronged anyone. And we have never taken advantage of anyone. [3] I do not scold you to condemn you. We love you with all our hearts! We are united in purpose and we will live with you and die with you. [4] Moreover, I not only love you, I praise you to others—and I am filled up to overflowing with such joy because of you, even when we are going through severe afflictions.

ULB:

[2] Make room for us! We have not wronged anyone. We have not harmed anyone or taken advantage of anyone. [3] It is not to condemn you that I say this. For I have already said that you are in our hearts, for us to die together and to live together. [4] I have great confidence in you, and I am proud of you. I am filled with comfort. I overflow with joy even in all our afflictions.

translationWords:

- wrong, mistreat, hurt
- condemn, condemnation
- heart
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- confidence, confident
- proud, pride, prideful
- comfort, comforter
- joy, joyful
- afflict, affliction

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Having already warned the people of Corinth about other leaders who were striving to get these Corinthian believers to follow them, Paul reminds the people of the way he feels about them.
- **Make room for us** - This refers back to what Paul said in 6:11-13 about them opening their hearts to him. AT: “Make room for us in your hearts” or “Love us and accept us” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **It is not to condemn you that I say this** - “I do not say this to accuse you of having done wrong.” The word “this” refers to what Paul just said about not having wronged anyone.
- **you are in our hearts** - Paul speaks of his and his associates’ great love for the Corinthians as if they held them in their hearts. AT: “you are very dear to us” (See: Metaphor)

- **for us to die together and to live together** - This means that Paul and his associates will continue to love the Corinthians no matter what happens. AT: “whether we live or whether we die” (See: Idiom)
- **for us to die** - “us” includes the Corinthian believers. (See: Inclusive “We”)
- **I am filled with comfort** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “You fill me with comfort” (See: Active or Passive)
- **I overflow with joy** - Paul speaks of joy as if it is a liquid that fills him until he overflows. AT: “I am extremely joyful” (See: Metaphor)
- **even in all our afflictions** - “despite all our hardships”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7:5-7

UDB:

5 When we came to you in Macedonia, we were exhausted. We had troubles on every side—we faced hardships that other people caused, and we feared many things. 6 But God always comforts us when we are discouraged, and he comforted us at that time by sending Titus to be with us. 7 Titus's coming was a great comfort, but you also comforted him when you were with him. When he came to us, he told us of your deep love for us, and how you were sorry for us in our sufferings. He also told us about how you were deeply concerned for me, so I rejoiced even more because of you.

ULB:

5 When we came to Macedonia, our bodies had no rest. Instead, we were troubled in every way by conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside. 6 But God, who comforts the discouraged, comforted us by the arrival of Titus. 7 It was not only by his arrival that God comforted us. It was also by the comfort that Titus had received from you. He told us of your great affection, your sorrow, and your deep concern for me. So I rejoiced even more.

translationWords:

- Macedonia
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- God
- comfort, comforter
- Titus
- rejoice

translationNotes:

- **When we came to Macedonia** - Here the word "we" refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Corinthians or Titus. (See: Exclusive "We")
- **our bodies had no rest** - Here "bodies" refers to the whole person. AT: "we had no rest" or "we were very tired" (See: Synecdoche)
- **we were troubled in every way** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "we experienced trouble in every way" (See: Active or Passive)
- **by conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside** - Possible meanings for "outside" are 1) "outside of our bodies" or 2) "outside of the church." The word "inside" refers to their inward emotions. AT: "by conflicts with other people and by fears within ourselves" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- **by the comfort that Titus had received from you** - Paul received comfort from knowing that the Corinthians had comforted Titus. AT: “by learning about the comfort that Titus had received from you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7:8-10

UDB:

[8] I know the letter I wrote to you made you sad, but I had to write it. I did regret it when I wrote it, but what I wrote to you was necessary to help you deal with the problems in the church. I knew that your sorrow would last only for a short time. [9] And so now I can rejoice, not because you were sad when you read my letter, but because your sorrow turned you away from the sin that was hurting you so much, and it changed your sadness into a sorrow that God brought to you, a sorrow that gave you so much more than you had lost. [10] This kind of sorrow turns a person away from sin so that God can rescue him; people are glad, in the end, to have had this kind of sorrow. On the other hand, worldly sorrow, a sadness for your sins only because you were caught in them, can lead only to death.

ULB:

[8] Even though my letter made you sad, I do not regret it. But I did regret it when I saw that my letter made you sad. But you were sad just for a little while. [9] Now I am happy, not because you were distressed, but because your sadness brought you to repentance. You experienced a godly sorrow, so you suffered no loss because of us. [10] For godly sorrow brings about repentance that accomplishes salvation without regret. Worldly sorrow, however, brings about death.

translationWords:

- letter, epistle
- rejoice
- repent, repentance
- godly, godliness
- suffer, suffering
- salvation
- world, worldly
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul praises them for their godly sorrow, their zeal to do right, and the joy that it brought him and Titus.
- **General Information:** - This refers to Paul's previous letter to these Corinthian believers where he rebuked them for their acceptance of a believer's sexual immorality with his father's wife.
- **when I saw that my letter** - "when I learned that my letter"

- **not because you were distressed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “not because what I said in my letter distressed you” (See: Active or Passive)
- **you suffered no loss because of us** - “you suffered no loss because we rebuked you.” This means that although the letter caused them sorrow, they eventually benefited from the letter because it led them to repentance. AT: “so that we did not harm you in any way” (See: Idiom)
- **For godly sorrow brings about repentance that accomplishes salvation** - The word “repentance” may be repeated to clarify its relationship to what precedes it and what follows it. AT: “For godly sorrow produces repentance, and repentance leads to salvation” (See: Ellipsis)
- **without regret** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul has no regret that he caused them sorrow because that sorrow led to their repentance and salvation or 2) the Corinthians will not regret experiencing sorrow because it led to their repentance and salvation.
- **Worldly sorrow, however, brings about death** - This kind of sorrow leads to death instead of salvation because it does not produce repentance. AT: “Worldly sorrow, however, leads to spiritual death” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7:11-12

UDB:

[11] Now think about how much good you wanted to do because you had this sorrow that God gave you: you wanted to show me you were innocent. You were so concerned about that accusation of sin, and you were so worried about how that person had sinned. You wanted justice to be done. In sum, you showed that you were innocent. [12] What I wrote to you was not intended for the wrongdoer, and it was not written either for the one who suffered the wrong, but it was written for you to understand how much you are faithful to us. God knows that you are faithful to us.

ULB:

[11] See what great determination this godly sorrow produced in you. How great was the determination in you to prove you were innocent. How great was your indignation, your fear, your longing, your zeal, and your desire to see that justice should be done! In everything you have proved yourselves to be innocent in this matter. [12] Although I wrote to you, I did not write for the sake of the wrongdoer, nor for the one who suffered the wrong. I wrote so that your earnestness for us should be made known to you in the sight of God.

translationWords:

- godly, godliness
- innocent
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- zeal, zealous
- just, justice, justly
- suffer, suffering
- wrong, mistreat, hurt
- God

translationNotes:

- **See** - This word adds emphasis to what is said next.
- **How great was the determination in you to prove you were innocent** - Here the word "How" makes this statement an exclamation. AT: "Your determination to prove you were innocent was very great!" (See: Exclamations)
- **your indignation** - "your anger"
- **that justice should be done** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that someone should carry out justice" (See: Active or Passive)
- **the wrongdoer** - "the one who did wrong"

- **so that your earnestness for us should be made known to you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that you would know that your earnestness for us is sincere” (See: Active or Passive)
- **in the sight of God** - This refers to God’s presence. God’s understanding and approval of Paul’s truthfulness is referred to as God being able to see them. AT: “before God” or “with God as witness.” See how you translated this in 4:2. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7:13-14

UDB:

[13] By all of this we are very encouraged!

We were so happy about what Titus told us, and we were also happy because you had given him rest and helped him. [14] I told him very good things about you, how proud I was of you, and you did not put me to shame when he came to you. We praised you so much to Titus, and you proved it was all true!

ULB:

[13] It is by this that we are encouraged.

In addition to our own comfort, we also rejoiced even more because of Titus' joy, because his spirit was refreshed by all of you. [14] For if I boasted to him about you, I was not embarrassed. On the contrary, just as everything we said to you was true, our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true.

translationWords:

- encourage, encouragement
- comfort, comforter
- rejoice
- Titus
- joy, joyful
- spirit, spiritual
- boast, boastful
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **It is by this that we are encouraged** - Here the word "this" refers to the way the Corinthians responded to Paul's previous letter, as he described in the previous verse. This can be stated in active form. AT: "This is what encourages us" (See: Active or Passive)
- **his spirit was refreshed by all of you** - Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's temperament and disposition. This can be stated in active form. AT: "all of you refreshed his spirit" or "all of you made him stop worrying" (See: Active or Passive)
- **For if I boasted to him about you** - "For although I boasted to him about you"
- **I was not embarrassed** - "you did not disappoint me"
- **our boasting about you to Titus proved to be true** - "you proved that our boasting about you to Titus was true"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 7:15-16

UDB:

15 Now his love for you has grown because he has seen for himself how much you follow God, and he knows how you welcomed him among yourselves—you welcomed him with fear, because God is holy, and with trembling, because you know God is great. 16 I am filled with joy because in everything, I have confidence in you.

ULB:

15 His affection for you is even greater, as he remembers the obedience of all of you, how you welcomed him with fear and trembling. 16 I rejoice because I have complete confidence in you.

translationWords:

- obey, obedient, obedience
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- tremble
- rejoice
- confidence, confident

translationNotes:

- **the obedience of all of you** - This noun “obedience” can be stated with a verb, “obey.” AT: “how all of you obeyed” (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **you welcomed him with fear and trembling** - Here “fear” and “trembling” share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of fear. AT: “you welcomed him with great reverence” (See: Doublet)
- **with fear and trembling** - Possible meanings are 1) “with great reverence for God” or 2) “with great reverence for Titus.”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 07 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 07 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 8 and 9 begin a new section dealing with the gift from the churches in Greece to the poor believers in Jerusalem.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 8:15, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Gift to the Church in Jerusalem

The church in Corinth started preparing a gift of money for the poor believers in Jerusalem. The churches in Macedonia also given generously. Now, Paul is sending Titus and two other believers to Corinth to encourage the Corinthians to give generous. Paul and the others will carry the money to Jerusalem because they want people to know that it is being done honestly.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

We

It is likely that Paul's usage of the pronoun "we" represents at least Timothy and himself. It is possible that it may also include other people.

The use of paradox

This is a statement that seems absurd and appears to contradict itself. A paradox occurs in this chapter: having joy in affliction. This is a counter-intuitive reaction to difficulties. Paul also uses riches and poverty in other apparent paradoxes.

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 08:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 8:1-2

UDB:

[1] We want you to know, brothers and sisters, about how God has been kindly working in wonderful ways among the churches in the province of Macedonia. [2] Although the believers there were suffering very much, they were rejoicing so much that, although they are poor, they gave much money for the collection for the believers in Jerusalem.

ULB:

8 [1] We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. [2] During a great test of affliction, the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty have produced great riches of generosity.

translationWords:

- brother
- grace, gracious
- God
- church, Church
- Macedonia
- test
- afflict, affliction
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Having explained his changed plans and his ministry direction, Paul talks about giving.
- **the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the grace that God has given to the churches of Macedonia” (See: Active or Passive)
- **the abundance of their joy and the extremity of their poverty have produced great riches of generosity** - Paul speaks of “joy” and “poverty” as if they were living things that can produce generosity. AT: “because of the people’s great joy and extreme poverty, they have become very generous” (See: Personification)
- **the abundance of their joy** - Paul speaks of joy as if it were a physical object that could increase in size or quantity. (See: Metaphor)
- **extremity of their poverty ... riches of generosity** - Though the churches of Macedonia have suffered testings of affliction and poverty, by God’s grace, they have been able to collect money for the believers in Jerusalem.

- **great riches of generosity** - “a very great generosity.” The words “great riches” emphasize the greatness of their generosity.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:3-5

UDB:

[3] They gave as much as they were able—and I testify it is true—and some sacrificed and gave so much they suffered need themselves, but they still gave. They wanted to give, [4] and they begged us over and over and pleaded with us to allow them to give to this collection, so they could help those believers whom God has set apart for himself. [5] We did not think they could give like that. But they first gave themselves to the Lord, and then they gave themselves to us.

ULB:

[3] For I bear witness that they gave as much as they were able, and even beyond what they were able. And of their own free will [4] with much begging they pleaded with us for the privilege of sharing in this ministry to the believers. [5] This did not happen as we had expected. Instead, they first gave themselves to the Lord. Then they gave themselves to us by the will of God.

translationWords:

- witness, eyewitness
- beg, beggar
- plead, pleading, plea
- minister, ministry
- believer
- Lord
- will of God

translationNotes:

- **they gave** - This refers to the churches in Macedonia.
- **of their own free will** - “voluntarily”
- **with much begging they pleaded with us** - Here the words “begging” and “pleaded” share similar meanings and emphasize the earnestness with which the people pleaded. AT: “they pleaded very earnestly with us” (See: Doublet)
- **this ministry to the believers** - Paul is referring to providing money to the believers in Jerusalem. AT: “this ministry of providing for the believers in Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes

- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:6-7

UDB:

[6] Titus had already begun encouraging you to contribute money, so we urged him to guide the collection to its end. [7] As you do better than others, not only in your trust in God, in your encouraging words, in what you have learned, in taking a task to completion, and in your love for us—make sure you do very well by completing this collection also.

ULB:

[6] So we urged Titus, who had already begun this task, to bring to completion this act of generosity on your part. [7] But you abound in everything—in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in all diligence, and in your love for us. So also make sure that you abound in this generous deed.[1]The ULB and UDB, together with many other versions, read, *and in your love for us.* Some other versions read, *and in our love for you.*

translationWords:

- Titus
- faith
- know, knowledge, make known
- love
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **who had already begun this task** - Paul is referring to the collection of money from the Corinthians for the believers in Jerusalem. AT: “who had encouraged your giving in the first place” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **to bring to completion this act of generosity on your part** - Titus was to help the Corinthians to complete the collection of money. AT: “to encourage you to complete your generous gift” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **But you abound in everything** - Paul speaks of the Corinthian believers as if they were producing physical goods. AT: “You do well in so many ways” (See: Metaphor)
- **make sure that you abound in this generous deed** - Paul speaks of the Corinthian believers as if they should produce physical goods. AT: “make sure you do well in giving for the believers in Jerusalem” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:8-9

UDB:

[8] I am not giving you an order, but I want you to prove how much you love the Lord by comparing how you give to how others give to people in need. [9] I say this, because you know how kind Jesus Christ has been to you. Although he possessed everything, he gave it all up and became poor. He did this in order to make you rich.

ULB:

[8] I say this not as a command. Instead, I say this in order to test the sincerity of your love by comparing it to the eagerness of other people. [9] For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ. Even though he was rich, for your sakes he became poor, so that through his poverty you might become rich.

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- love
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- grace, gracious
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- **by comparing it to the eagerness of other people** - Paul is encouraging the Corinthians to give generously by comparing them with the generosity of the Macedonian churches. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **the grace of our Lord** - In this context, the word “grace” emphasizes the generosity with which Jesus had blessed the Corinthians.
- **Even though he was rich, for your sakes he became poor** - Paul speaks of Jesus before his incarnation as being rich, and of his becoming human as becoming poor. (See: Metaphor)
- **through his poverty you might become rich** - Paul speaks of the Corinthians becoming spiritually rich as a result of Jesus becoming human. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:10-12

UDB:

10 And in this I have some encouragement to give you: you started this ministry of help a year ago,
and when you began it you were eager to do it. 11 In the same way, you should finish this work.
Just as you were eager to begin this work, you should be eager to end it, and to do this as quickly
as you can. 12 God will accept what you do in this task, if you are eager to do it. You must finish the
work by giving money from the money that you have. You cannot give what you do not have.

ULB:

10 In this matter I will give you advice that will help you. One year ago, you not only started to do
something, but you desired to do it. 11 Now finish it. Just as there was an eagerness and desire to
do it then, may you also bring it to completion, as much as you can. 12 For if you are eager to do
this deed, it is a good and acceptable thing. It must be based on what a person has, not on what he
does not have.

translationWords:

- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

translationNotes:

- **In this matter** - This refers to their collecting money to give to the believers in Jerusalem. AT: “With regard to the collection” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **there was an eagerness and desire to do it** - This can be stated with a verbal phrase. AT: “you were eager and desired to do it” (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **bring it to completion** - “complete it” or “finish it”
- **a good and acceptable thing** - Here the words “good” and “acceptable” share similar meanings and emphasize the goodness of the thing. AT: “a very good thing” (See: Doublet)
- **It must be based on what a person has** - “Giving must be based on what a person has”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:13-15

UDB:

13 We are not taxing you because we do not want others to have to support themselves. But it is fair for you to help them. 14 You have more than you need at this time; what you have left over will be enough for them, too. In the future, they will have more than they need, and perhaps then, they will be able to help you. That is fair for everyone. 15 This is like the scriptures say:

> "The one who had much did not have anything left to share;
>
> but the one who had only a little did not need anything more."

ULB:

13 For this task is not in order that others may be relieved and you may be burdened. Instead, there should be fairness. 14 Your abundance at the present time will supply what they need. This is also so that their abundance may supply your need, and so that there may be fairness. 15 It is as it is written:

> "The one with much did not have anything left over,
>
> and the one who had little did not have any lack."

translationWords:

- burden
- written

translationNotes:

- **For this task** - This refers to collecting money for the believers in Jerusalem. AT: "For this task of collecting money" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **that others may be relieved and you may be burdened** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that you may relieve others and burden yourselves" (See: Active or Passive)
- **there should be fairness** - "there should be equality"
- **This is also so that their abundance may supply your need** - Since the Corinthians are acting in the present time, it is implied that the believers in Jerusalem will also help them at some time in the future. AT: "This is also so that in the future their abundance may supply your need"
- **as it is written** - Here Paul quotes from Exodus. This can be stated in active form. AT: "as Moses wrote" (See: Active or Passive)
- **did not have any lack** - This can be stated positively. AT: "had all he needed" (See: Double Negatives)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:16-17

UDB:

16 We thank God because he has caused Titus to care for you as much as I do. 17 When we asked him to help you, he agreed to do so. He was so eager to help you that he decided to visit you himself.

ULB:

16 But thanks be to God, who put into Titus' heart the same earnest care that I have for you. 17 For he not only accepted our appeal, but he was also very earnest about it. He came to you of his own free will.

translationWords:

- God
- Titus
- heart

translationNotes:

- **who put into Titus' heart the same earnest care that I have for you** - Here the word "heart" refers to the emotions. This means that God caused Titus to love them. AT: "who made Titus care for you as much as I do" (See: Synecdoche)
- **same earnest care** - "the same enthusiasm" or "same deep concern"
- **For he not only accepted our appeal** - Paul is referring to his asking Titus to return to Corinth and complete the collection. AT: "For he not only agreed to our request that he help you with the collection" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:18-19

UDB:

[18] We have sent Titus along with another Christian brother. All the believers in the churches praise him because he preaches the good news very well. [19] The believers in the churches asked him to go with us to Jerusalem to help us take to the believers there what you and the others are giving to them. We all want to contribute this money in order to honor the Lord and to show everyone how much we believers help each other.

ULB:

[18] We have sent with him the brother who is praised among all of the churches for his work in proclaiming the gospel. [19] Not only this, but he also was selected by the churches to travel with us in our carrying out this act of generosity. This is for the honor of the Lord himself and for our eagerness to help.

translationWords:

- brother
- praise
- church, Church
- proclaim, proclamation
- good news, gospel
- honor, to honor
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **with him** - “with Titus”
- **the brother who is praised among all of the churches** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the brother whom believers among all of the churches praise” (See: Active or Passive)
- **Not only this** - “Not only do believers among all of the churches praise him”
- **he also was selected by the churches** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the churches also selected him” (See: Active or Passive)
- **in our carrying out this act of generosity** - “to carry out this act of generosity.” This refers to taking the offering to Jerusalem.
- **for our eagerness to help** - “to demonstrate our eagerness to help”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:20-21

UDB:

[20] We are doing everything we can to keep anyone from asking why we are asking for this money that you are giving so generously. [21] We are careful to do all this in an honest and open way. We want everyone to know how we are doing this, and we know that the Lord sees us, too.

ULB:

[20] We are avoiding the possibility that anyone should complain about us concerning this generosity that we are carrying out. [21] We take care to do what is honorable, not only before the Lord, but also before people.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **concerning this generosity that we are carrying out** - "concerning the way we are handling this generous gift." This refers to taking the offering to Jerusalem.
- **We take care to do what is honorable** - "We are careful to handle this gift in an honorable way"
- **before the Lord ... before people** - "in the Lord's opinion ... in people's opinion"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 8:22-24

UDB:

22 And with these brothers we are sending to you, we are adding still one more brother. We have seen that this brother does important work in a very faithful manner. He now desires even more to help you because he trusts you very much. 23 As for Titus himself, he is my partner; he works alongside me. The other brothers—it is the churches in our region who have chosen them to go with us to Jerusalem. When other people see them, they will praise Christ very much because of them. 24 So show these brothers how you love them; show them why we spoke so well about you, and why we could not stop telling all the churches how proud we are of you.

ULB:

22 We are also sending another brother with them. We have often tested him, and we have found him enthusiastic for many tasks. He is now even more diligent because of the great confidence he has in you. 23 As for Titus, he is my partner and fellow worker for you. As for our brothers, they are sent by the churches. They are an honor to Christ. 24 So show them your love, and show to the churches the reason for our boasting about you.

translationWords:

- brother
- test
- Titus
- church, Church
- honor, to honor
- Christ, Messiah
- love
- boast, boastful

translationNotes:

- **with them** - The word “them” refers to Titus and the previously mentioned brother.
- **he is my partner and fellow worker for you** - “he is my partner who works with me to help you”
- **As for our brothers** - This refers to the two other men who will accompany Titus.
- **they are sent by the churches** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the churches have sent them” (See: Active or Passive)
- **They are an honor to Christ** - This can be stated with a verbal phrase. AT: “They will cause people to honor Christ” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 08 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 08 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. Many English translations indent the line of 9:9, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

Paul uses three agricultural metaphors to give instructions about giving to those in need. Their overall purpose is to explain the point that God will reward those give generously. It does not gives specifics about how or when God will reward them. (See: Metaphor and reward)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 09:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 9:1-2

UDB:

[1] Now about this collection of money for the believers in Jerusalem—all those people whom God has set apart for himself, I really do not need to write anything more to you. [2] I already know that you want to help, and I praised you for this to the believers of Macedonia. In fact, I told them that you, and the other people of the province of Achaia, have been preparing for this collection since last year. Your enthusiasm is an example that has moved the believers of Macedonia to take action.

ULB:

9 [1] Concerning the ministry for the believers, it is not necessary for me to write to you. [2] I know about your desire, which I boasted about to the people of Macedonia. I told them that Achaia has been getting ready since last year. Your eagerness has motivated most of them to action.

translationWords:

- minister, ministry
- believer
- boast, boastful
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Macedonia

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues on the subject of giving. He wants to make sure that the collection of their offering for the needy believers in Jerusalem takes place before he comes so that it does not seem as though he takes advantage of them. He talks about how giving blesses the giver and glorifies God.
- **General Information:** - When Paul refers to Achaia, he is talking about a Roman province located in southern Greece where Corinth is located. (See: How to Translate Names)
- **the ministry for the believers** - This refers to the collection of money to give to the believers in Jerusalem. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “the ministry for the believers in Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **Achaia has been getting ready** - Here the word “Achaia” refers to the people who live in this province, and specifically to the people of the church in Corinth. AT: “the people of Achaia have been preparing” (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 09 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 09 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 9:3-5

UDB:

[3] For I am sending the brothers ahead of me, so that when they meet you, they will see that we did not praise you for nothing; I also sent them ahead of me so that you would be ready to finish the work, as I promised others you would be. [4] I am afraid that some Macedonians might come with me when I come a little later, and that they might find that you are not ready to give all that you want to give. If that happens, we will be ashamed that we spoke so well about you—and you would be ashamed, too. [5] I decided it was necessary to make every effort to send the brothers to you, so they could set in order everything necessary to receive the money you have promised to give. In this way, this money will be something you freely offer, rather than a tax that we make you pay.

ULB:

[3] Now I have sent the brothers so that our boasting about you may not be futile, and so that you would be ready, as I said you would be. [4] Otherwise, if any Macedonians come with me and find you unprepared, we would be ashamed—I say nothing about you—for being so confident in you. [5] So I thought it was necessary to urge the brothers to come to you and to make arrangements in advance for the gift you have promised. This is so that it might be ready as a blessing, and not as something extorted.

translationWords:

- brother
- boast, boastful
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- confidence, confident
- gift
- promise
- bless, blessed, blessing

translationNotes:

- **the brothers** - This refers to Titus and the two men who accompany him.
- **our boasting about you may not be futile** - Paul does not want others to think that the things that he had boasted about the Corinthians were false.
- **find you unprepared** - “find you unprepared to give”
- **I say nothing about you** - Paul uses this negative statement to emphasize that the same thing is true about the Corinthians. AT: “and you would be even more ashamed”
- **the brothers to come to you** - From Paul’s perspective, the brothers are going. AT: “the brothers to go to you” (See: Go and Come)

- **not as something extorted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “not as something that we forced you to give” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 09 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 09 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 9:6-7

UDB:

[6] The point is, anyone who sows very little seed will also have a small crop to harvest, but anyone who sows a great amount of seed will gather a great harvest. [7] First decide in your heart how much money to give, so when you give it you will not regret doing it. You should not feel that anyone is forcing you to give, because God loves a person who is happy to give.

ULB:

[6] The point is this: the one who sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and the one who sows for the purpose of a blessing will also reap a blessing. [7] Let each one give as he has planned in his heart. Let him not give out of sorrow or compulsion. For God loves a cheerful giver.

translationWords:

- sow, sower, plant
- reap, reaper
- bless, blessed, blessing
- heart
- God
- love

translationNotes:

- **the one who sows ... reap a blessing** - Paul uses the image of a farmer sowing seeds to describe the results of giving. As a farmer's harvest is based on how much he sows, so will God's blessings be little or much based on how generously the Corinthians give. (See: Metaphor)
- **give as he has planned in his heart** - Here the word "heart" refers to the thoughts and emotions. AT: "give as he has determined" (See: Metonymy)
- **out of sorrow or compulsion** - This can be translated with verbal phrases. AT: "because he feels guilty or someone is compelling him" (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **For God loves a cheerful giver** - God wants people to give gladly to help provide for fellow believers.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 09 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 09 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 9:8-9

UDB:

[8] God can give you all kinds of gifts more and more, so that you will always have what you yourselves need, and also enough to do good things with. [9] As it is written in the scriptures:

> ”He gives good things to people everywhere,
>
> and he gives to the poor what they need.
>
> He does these things forever.

ULB:

[8] And God is able to make every blessing multiply for you, so that, always, in all things, you may have all you need. This will be so that you may multiply every good deed. [9] It is as it is written:

> ”He has distributed his riches and given them to the poor.
>
> His righteousness lasts forever.”

translationWords:

- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- works, deeds, work, acts
- written
- righteous, righteousness
- forever

translationNotes:

- **God is able to make every blessing multiply for you** - “God is able to increase every blessing for you.” As one gives financially to other believers, God also gives more blessings to the giver so that the giver will have everything he needs.
- **so that you may multiply every good deed** - “so that you may be able to do more and more good deeds”
- **It is as it is written** - “This is just as it is written.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “This is just as the writer wrote” (See: Active or Passive)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 09 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 09 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 9:10-11

UDB:

10 God gives seed to the one who sows, and he gives bread to one who bakes it. He will also supply your seed and increase what you are able to give away to others. 11 God will make you rich in many ways, so that you can be generous. As a result, many others will thank God for what they receive through the work that we apostles have done.

ULB:

10 He who supplies seed to the farmer who sows and bread for food, will also supply and multiply your seed for sowing. He will increase the harvest of your righteousness. 11 You will be enriched in every way so you can be generous. This will bring about thanksgiving to God through us.

translationWords:

- seed
- sow, sower, plant
- bread
- harvest
- righteous, righteousness
- God

translationNotes:

- **He who supplies** - "God who supplies"
- **bread for food** - Here the word "bread" refers to food in general. AT: "food to eat" (See: Metonymy)
- **will also supply and multiply your seed for sowing** - Paul speaks of the Corinthians' possessions as if they are seeds and of giving to others as if they were sowing seeds. AT: "will also supply and multiply your possessions so that you can sow them by giving them to others" (See: Metaphor)
- **He will increase the harvest of your righteousness** - Paul compares the benefits that the Corinthians will receive from their generosity to that of a harvest. AT: "God will bless you even more for your righteousness" (See: Metaphor)
- **the harvest of your righteousness** - "the harvest that comes from your righteous actions." Here the word "righteousness" refers to the righteous actions of the Corinthians in giving their resources to the believers in Jerusalem.
- **You will be enriched** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God will enrich you" (See: Active or Passive)

- **This will bring about thanksgiving to God through us** - The word this refers to the Corinthian's generosity. AT: "Because of your generosity, those who receive the gifts we bring them will thank God" or "and when we give your gifts to those who need them, they will give thanks to God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 09 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 09 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 9:12-15

UDB:

12 We receive this money, not only to help our Christian brothers and sisters in need; we also do
it so that many, many believers will thank God. 13 Because you began this task, you have shown
what kind of people you are. You honor God by obeying him and believing what he says in the
good news about Christ. You also honor him by giving generously. 14 The ones to whom you will
give will greatly desire to see you; they will pray for you, because of the wonderful way in which
God has been kind to you. 15 We give thanks to God for this gift from him—his gift is so great we
cannot express it in words.

ULB:

12 For carrying out this service not only meets the needs of the believers. It also multiplies into
many acts of thanksgiving to God. 13 Because of your being tested and proved by this service, you
will also glorify God by obedience to your confession of the gospel of Christ. You will also glorify
God by the generosity of your gift to them and to everyone. 14 They long for you, and they are
praying for you. They do this because of the very great grace of God that is on you. 15 May thanks
be to God for his inexpressible gift!

translationWords:

- serve, service
- believer
- God
- test
- glorify
- obey, obedient, obedience
- confess, confession
- good news, gospel
- Christ, Messiah
- gift
- pray, prayer
- grace, gracious

translationNotes:

- **For carrying out this service** - Here the word “service” refers to Paul and his companions bringing the contribution to the believers in Jerusalem. AT: “For our carrying out this service for the believers in Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

- **It also multiplies into many acts of thanksgiving to God** - Paul speaks of the Corinthian believers' act of service as if it were an object that could multiply itself into many objects. AT: "It also causes many deeds for which people will thank God" (See: Metaphor)
- **Because of your being tested and proved by this service** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Because this service has tested and proven you" (See: Active or Passive)
- **you will also glorify God by obedience ... by the generosity of your gift to them and to everyone** - Paul says that the Corinthians will glorify God both by being faithful to Jesus and by giving generously to other believers who have need.
- **for his inexpressible gift** - "for his gift, which words cannot describe." Possible meanings are 1) that this gift refers to "the very great grace" that God has given to the Corinthians, which has led them to be so generous or 2) that this gift refers to Jesus Christ, whom God gave to all believers.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 09 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 09 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the last line of 10:17, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

In this chapter, Paul returns to the topic of defending his authority. He also addresses the difference between the way he speaks and the way he writes.

Special concepts in this chapter

Boasting

Boasting is another word for bragging. Bragging has negative connotations while boasting should not.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

In verses 10:3-6, Paul uses many metaphors from war. These are probably used a part of a larger metaphor about Christians engaging in spiritual warfare. (See: Metaphor)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Flesh

This is a complex issue and it is possible that “flesh” is a metaphor for a person’s sinful nature. It is not the physical part of man that is sinful and it appears that Paul is teaching that while man remains alive (“in the flesh”), he will remain sinful regardless of his effort. His new nature will fight against his old nature. (See: flesh)

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 10:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 10:1-2

UDB:

[1] Now I, Paul, beg of you—and I am humble and gentle as I do so, because Christ has made me that way: I, who was shy when I was in front of you, but forceful when I am writing you a letter from far away: [2] I beg of you that, when I come, I will not have to be harsh with you. I am afraid, however, that I will have to be, in order to speak against the people who think that we work with human standards.

ULB:

10 [1] I, Paul, myself appeal to you, by the humility and gentleness of Christ. I am meek when I am in your presence, but I am bold toward you when I am away. [2] I beg of you that, when I am present with you, I will not need to be bold with self-confidence. But I think I will need to be bold when I oppose those who assume that we are living according to the flesh.

translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- humble, humility
- Christ, Messiah
- meek, meekness
- bold, boldly, boldness
- confidence, confident
- flesh

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul shifts the subject from giving to affirming his authority to teach as he does.
- **by the humility and gentleness of Christ** - The word “humility” and “gentleness” are abstract nouns, and can be expressed in another way. AT: “I am humble and gentle as I do so, because Christ has made me that way” (UDB) (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **who assume that** - “who think that”
- **we are living according to the flesh** - The word “flesh” is a metonym for sinful human nature. “we are acting from human motives” (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:3-4

UDB:

[3] For though we now are living in our physical bodies, we are fighting like armies fight. [4] And we are fighting with weapons, but these weapons are not designed by human beings, but by God. These weapons are powerful, so powerful that they can tear apart any false arguments.

ULB:

[3] For even though we walk in the flesh, we do not wage war according to the flesh. [4] For the weapons we fight with are not fleshly. Instead, they have divine power to destroy strongholds. They bring to nothing misleading arguments.

translationWords:

- walk
- flesh
- divine
- power, powers
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

translationNotes:

- **we walk in the flesh** - The word “flesh” is a metonym for physical life. AT: “we live our lives in physical bodies” (See: Metonymy)
- **we do not wage war ... we fight** - Paul speaks of his trying to persuade the Corinthians to believe him and not the false teachers as if he were fighting a physical war. These words should be translated literally. (See: Metaphor)
- **wage war according to the flesh** - Possible meanings are 1) the word “flesh” is a metonym for physical life. AT: “fight against our enemies using physical weapons” or 2) the word “flesh” is a metonym for sinful human nature. AT: “wage war in sinful ways” (See: Metonymy)
- **the weapons we fight with ... bring to nothing misleading arguments** - Paul speaks of godly wisdom showing human wisdom to be false as if it were a weapon with which he was destroying an enemy stronghold. AT: “the weapons we fight with ... show people that what our enemies say is completely wrong” (See: Metaphor)
- **are not fleshly** - Possible meanings are 1) the word “fleshly” is a metonym for merely physical. AT: “are not physical” or 2) the word “fleshly” is a metonym for sinful human nature. AT: “are not sinful” or “do not enable us to do wrong” (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:5-6

UDB:

[5] In this way we can tear apart every false argument and all those who rise up against God. Those are the ones who try to keep people from knowing him. We keep and hold every thought that people have and we take those thoughts as our prisoners. God would work in those who did not obey him, and they will turn to him, and one day they will obey Christ. [6] When you completely obey Christ yourselves, we will be ready to punish any who remain disobedient to him.

ULB:

[5] We also destroy every high thing that rises up against the knowledge of God. We take every thought captive into obedience to Christ. [6] And we are getting ready to punish every act of disobedience, as soon as your obedience is complete.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- God
- captive, captivity
- Christ, Messiah
- punish, punishment
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- obey, obedient, obedience

translationNotes:

- **every high thing that rises up** - Paul is still speaking with the metaphor of a war, as if "the knowledge of God" were an army and "every high thing" were a wall that people had made to keep the army out. AT: "every false argument that proud people think of to protect themselves"
- **every high thing** - "everything that proud people do"
- **rises up against the knowledge of God** - Paul speaks of arguments as if they were a wall standing high against an army. The words "rises up" mean "stands tall," not that the "high thing" is floating up into the air. AT: "people use so they will not have to know who God is" (See: Metaphor)
- **We take every thought captive into obedience to Christ** - Paul speaks of people's thoughts as if they were enemy soldiers whom he captures in battle. AT: "We show how all the false ideas those people have are wrong and teach the people to obey Christ" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

- **punish every act of disobedience** - The words “act of disobedience” are a metonym for the people who commit those acts. AT: “punish every one of you who disobey us” (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:7-8

UDB:

7 You should look at the clear facts. If anyone has faith that he belongs to Christ, remind him that just as he belongs to Christ, so do we! 8 When I praised myself about our authority as apostles, that may have been too much for you. But the Lord gave that authority to me not to destroy you, but to help you and make you strong. So I am not ashamed of the authority the Lord gave me.

ULB:

7 Look at what is clearly in front of you. If anyone is convinced that he is Christ's, let him remind himself that just as he is Christ's, so also are we. 8 For even if I boast a little too much about our authority, which the Lord gave for us to build you up and not to destroy you, I will not be ashamed.

translationWords:

- Christ, Messiah
- boast, boastful
- authority
- Lord
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **Look at what is clearly in front of you** - Possible meanings are 1) this is a command or 2) this is a statement, "You are looking only at what you can see with your eyes." Some think this is a rhetorical question which may also be written as a statement. AT: "Are you looking at what is clearly in front of you?" or "You seem unable to see what is clearly in front of you" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **let him remind himself** - "he needs to remember"
- **that just as he is Christ's, so also are we** - "that we belong to Christ just as much as he does"
- **to build you up and not to destroy you** - Paul speaks of helping the Corinthians to know Christ better as if he were constructing a building. AT: "to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him" (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:9-10

UDB:

9 Though my letters seem strong when you read them, I do not want you to be afraid when you read them. That is not why I have written them to you. 10 Some people who know me and read my letters say, “We should take his letters seriously because they say powerful things, but when Paul is with us, he is physically weak and he is not worth listening to.”

ULB:

9 I do not want it to appear that I am terrifying you by my letters. 10 For some people say, “His letters are serious and powerful, but physically he is weak. His words are not worth listening to.”

translationWords:

- terror, terrify
- letter, epistle
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

translationNotes:

- **I am terrifying you** - “I am trying to frighten you”
- **serious and powerful** - “demanding and forceful”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:11-12

UDB:

[11] Let those who criticize me know that what we write to you in our letters are the very things we do when we are with you.

[12] We will not even try to compare ourselves with those who praise themselves. When they compare themselves to one another, it proves only that they are foolish.

ULB:

[11] Let such people be aware that what we are in the words of our letters when we are absent is what we will be in our actions when we are there. [12] We do not go so far as to group ourselves or compare ourselves with those who praise themselves. But when they measure themselves by one another and compare themselves with each other, they have no insight.

translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- letter, epistle
- praise

translationNotes:

- **Let such people be aware** - “I want such people to be aware”
- **what we are in the words of our letters when we are absent is what we will be in our actions when we are there** - “we will do the same things when we are there with you that we have written about in our letters while we have been away from you”
- **we ... our** - All instances of these words refer to Paul’s ministry team but not the Corinthians. (See: Exclusive “We”)
- **to group ourselves or compare** - “to say we are as good as”
- **they measure themselves by one another and compare themselves with each other** - Paul is saying much the same thing twice. (See: Parallelism)
- **they measure themselves by one another** - Paul is speaking of goodness as though it were something whose length people could measure. AT: “they look at each other and try to see who is better” (See: Metaphor)
- **have no insight** - “show everyone that they do not know anything”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:13-14

UDB:

[13] We will praise ourselves only about what God has given us to do. And we will work only as he has told us to work; our work, however, includes you also. [14] When we reached out to you, we did not go beyond where God assigned us to work. He assigned your region to us, and we were the first to tell you the Good News about Christ.

ULB:

[13] We, however, will not boast beyond limits. Instead, we will do so only within the limits of what God has assigned to us, limits that reach as far as you. [14] For we did not overextend ourselves when we reached you. We were the first to reach as far as you with the gospel of Christ.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- God
- good news, gospel
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Paul speaks of the authority he has as if it were a land over which he rules, those things over which he has authority as being within the borders or "limits" of his land, and those things not under his authority as being beyond the "limits." (See: Metaphor)
- **will not boast beyond limits** - This is an idiom. AT: "will not boast about things over which we have no authority" or "will boast only about things over which we have authority" (See: Idiom)
- **within the limits of what God** - "about things under the authority that God"
- **limits that reach as far as you** - Paul speaks of the authority he has as if it were a land over which he rules. AT: "and you are within the border of our authority" (See: Metaphor)
- **did not overextend ourselves** - "did not go beyond our borders"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:15-16

UDB:

15 We are not boasting about the work God gave to others, as if we had done that work. Instead, we hope that you will trust God more and more, and that in the same way, God will assign us a larger region to work in. 16 We hope for this, in order that we may share the good news with people beyond where you live. We will not take credit for work that any other servants of God are doing, in their own regions where they serve him.

ULB:

15 We have not boasted beyond limits about the labors of others. Instead, we hope as your faith grows that our own area of work will be greatly expanded, and still within its proper limits. 16 We hope for this, so that we may preach the gospel even in regions beyond you. We will not boast about the work being done in another's area.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- labor, laborer
- hope
- faith
- works, deeds, work, acts
- preach
- good news, gospel

translationNotes:

- **have not boasted beyond limits** - This is an idiom. AT: "have not boasted about things over which we have no authority" or "have not boasted only about things over which we have authority." See how these words were translated in 10:13. (See: Idiom)
- **our own area of work will be greatly expanded** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God will greatly expand our own area of work" (See: Active or Passive)
- **another's area** - "an area God has assigned to someone else"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 10:17-18

UDB:

17 The scriptures say,

> "Let the one who is proud, be proud of the Lord."

18 When a person praises himself for what he has done, God does not reward him for doing that. Instead, he rewards those whom he approves.

ULB:

> 17 "But let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord."

18 For it is not the one who recommends himself who is approved. Instead, it is the one whom the Lord recommends.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **boast in the Lord** - "boast about what the Lord has done"
- **recommends himself** - This means that he provides asks each person who hears him to decide whether he is right or wrong. See how "recommend ourselves" is translated in 4:2.
- **who is approved** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom the Lord approves" (See: Active or Passive)
- **it is the one whom the Lord recommends** - You can make clear the understood information. AT: "the one whom the Lord recommends is the one of whom the Lord approves" (See: Ellipsis)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 10 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 10 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues Paul's defense which started in chapter 10 and lasts through the end of the book.

Special concepts in this chapter

False teachings

The Corinthians were quick to accept false teaching about Jesus and Christianity. These other teachers were teaching things about Jesus and the gospel that were different and not true. Unlike these false teachers, Paul lived sacrificially in service of the Corinthians. (See: good news, gospel)

Light

This is a common image in the New Testament. Light is used here to indicate the revelation of God and his righteousness. Darkness describes sin and sin seeks to remain hidden from God. (See: light, righteous, righteousness, darkness and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Paul begins the chapter with an extended metaphor comparing Paul to the father of the bride giving a pure, virgin bride to her groom. Although wedding practices change depending on cultural background, the idea of helping to present someone as a grown and holy child is made rather explicit in this passage. (See: Metaphor, holy, holiness and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Irony

This chapter is very full of irony. Paul is hoping to shame the Corinthian believers with his irony. "You tolerate these things well enough!" Paul thinks that they should not tolerate the way the false apostles treated them. Paul does not think they are really apostles at all. The statement, "For you gladly put up with fools. You are wise yourselves!" means that the Corinthian believers think they were very wise but Paul does not agree. "I will say to our shame that we were too weak to do that" Paul is speaking about behavior he thinks is very wrong in order to avoid it. He is speaking as if he thinks he is wrong for not doing it. He used a rhetorical question also as irony. "Did I sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted?" (See: Irony, apostle, apostleship and Rhetorical Question)

Rhetorical questions

In refuting the false apostles' claims of superiority, Paul used a series of rhetorical questions coupled with an answer: "Are they Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? So am I. Are they servants of Christ? (I speak as though I were out of my mind.) I am more." He also used a series of rhetorical questions to express empathy with his converts: "Who is weak, and I am not weak? Who has caused another to fall into sin, and I do not burn within?"

"Are they servants of Christ?"

This is sarcasm, a special type of irony used to mock or insult. Paul does not believe these false teachers actually serve Christ, only that they pretend to.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The use of paradox

This is a statement that seems absurd, that appears to contradict itself. A paradox occurs in this chapter: Paul boasts in his weakness. This is a counter-intuitive reaction to difficulties.

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 11:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 11:1-2

UDB:

[1] It is foolish for a person to praise himself, but that is what I am doing. Please allow me to continue a little. [2] For I want to guard you carefully. I want to guard you the way God himself would guard you. I am like a father who promised you in marriage to only one husband and who wants to be the one who presents you, as a pure virgin bride, to Christ.

ULB:

11 [1] I wish that you could put up with me in some foolishness. But you are indeed putting up with me! [2] For I am jealous about you. I have a godly jealousy for you, since I promised you in marriage to one husband. I promised to present you as a pure virgin to Christ.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- jealous, jealousy
- godly, godliness
- promise
- pure, purify, purification
- virgin
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to affirm his apostleship.
- **put up with me in some foolishness** - “allow me to act like a fool”
- **jealous ... jealousy** - These words speak of a good, strong desire that the Corinthians be faithful to Christ, and that no one should persuade them to leave him.
- **I promised you in marriage to one husband. I promised to present you as a pure virgin to Christ** - Paul speaks of his care for the Corinthian believers as if he had promised another man that he would prepare his daughter to marry him and he is most concerned that he be able to keep his promise to the man. AT: “I was like a father who promised to present his daughter to one husband. I promised to keep you as a pure virgin so I could give you to Christ” (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:3-4

UDB:

[3] But as I think about you, I have become afraid that someone has tricked you, like the devil tricked Eve. I am afraid that someone has convinced you to stop loving Christ with an honest heart. [4] I say this because you do not seem to mind if someone else comes and tells you different things about Jesus than what we told you, or if he wants you to receive a different spirit from the Spirit of God, or a different kind of good news.

ULB:

[3] But I am afraid that somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, your thoughts might be led astray away from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ. [4] For suppose that someone comes and proclaims another Jesus than the one we preached. Or suppose that you receive a different spirit than what you received. Or suppose that you receive a different gospel than the one you received. You put up with these things well enough!

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- serpent, snake, viper
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- Eve
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- pure, purify, purification
- Christ, Messiah
- proclaim, proclamation
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- preach
- spirit, spiritual
- good news, gospel

translationNotes:

- **But I am afraid that somehow ... pure devotion to Christ** - “But I am afraid that somehow your thoughts might be led astray from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ just as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness”
- **your thoughts might be led astray away** - Paul speaks of thoughts as if they were animals that people could lead along the wrong path. AT: “someone might cause you to believe lies” (See: Metaphor)
- **For suppose that someone comes and** - “When anyone comes and”

- **a different spirit than what you received. Or suppose that you receive a different gospel than the one you received** - “a different spirit than the Holy Spirit, or a different gospel than you received from us”
- **put up with these things** - “deal with these things.” See how these words were translated in 11:1.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:5-6

UDB:

[5] People call those teachers “super-apostles,” but I do not think they are greater than I am. [6] It may be true that I never studied how to give wonderful speeches, but I certainly know many things about God, as you learned when I spoke to you.

ULB:

[5] For I think that I am not in the least inferior to those so-called super-apostles. [6] But even if I am untrained in giving speeches, I am not untrained in knowledge. In every way and in all things we have made this known to you.

translationWords:

- apostle, apostleship
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **those so-called super-apostles** - Paul uses irony here to show that they are less important then they claim to be. AT: “those teachers whom some think are better than anyone else” (See: Irony)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:7-9

UDB:

[7] Was I wrong to serve you as a humble person in such a way that others praised you instead of me? Was I wrong to preach the good news to you without charging any money? [8] Yes, I allowed believers in other churches to give me money so I could serve you. Maybe you will say that I was robbing them. But I asked you for nothing. [9] There was a time when I was with you that I needed many things, but I did not ask you for any money at all. The brothers who came from Macedonia provided all I needed, instead. I have done everything I could for you not to be in hardship because of me, and this I will continue to do.

ULB:

[7] Did I sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted? For I freely preached the gospel of God to you. [8] I robbed other churches by accepting support from them so that I could serve you. [9] When I was with you and I was in need, I did not burden anyone. For my needs were met by the brothers who came from Macedonia. In everything I have kept myself from being a burden to you, and I will continue to do that.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- humble, humility
- exalt, exaltation
- preach
- good news, gospel
- God
- church, Church
- serve, service
- burden
- brother
- Macedonia

translationNotes:

- **Did I sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted?** - Paul is beginning to claim that he treated the Corinthians well. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement, if necessary. AT: “I think we agree that I did not sin by humbling myself so you might be exalted” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **freely** - “without expecting anything from you in return”

- **I robbed other churches** - This is an exaggeration to emphasize that Paul took money from other churches. AT: “I accepted money from other churches” (See: Irony and Hyperbole)
- **I could serve you** - The full meaning of this can be made explicit. AT: “I could serve you at no cost” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **In everything I have kept myself from being a burden to you** - “I have never in any way been a financial burden to you.” Paul speaks of someone for whom one has to spend money as if they were heavy items that people have to carry. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. AT: “I have done all I can to make sure you do not have to spend money so that I can be with you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)
- **the brothers who came** - These “brothers” were probably all male.
- **I will continue to do that** - “I never will be a burden to you”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:10-11

UDB:

10 I am telling the complete truth about Christ and how I have worked for him. So I will continue to let everyone in all the region of Achaia know about this. 11 You do not really think that I refused your money because I did not love you, do you? Far from it! God knows I love you.

ULB:

10 As the truth of Christ is in me, this boasting of mine will not be silenced in the parts of Achaia.
11 Why? Because I do not love you? God knows.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- Christ, Messiah
- boast, boastful
- love
- God

translationNotes:

- **As the truth of Christ is in me, this** - Paul is emphasizing that because his readers know that he tells the truth about Christ, they can know that he is telling the truth here. "As surely as you know that I truly know and proclaim the truth about Christ, you can know that what I am about to say is true. This"
- **this boasting of mine will not be silenced** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "no one will be able to make me stop boasting and stay silent." Paul is "boasting" that he "freely preached the gospel" (11:7). (See: Active or Passive)
- **parts of Achaia** - "regions of Achaia." The word "parts" speaks of areas of land, not political divisions.
- **Why? Because I do not love you?** - Paul uses rhetorical questions to emphasize love for the Corinthians. These questions can be combined or made into a statement. AT: "Is it because I do not love you that I do not want to be a burden to you?" or "I will continue to keep you from paying for my needs because this shows others that I love you" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **God knows** - You can make clear the understood information. AT: "God knows I love you" (See: Ellipsis)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians

- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:12-13

UDB:

12 I will continue to serve you in this same way, so that I stop those who say that they are equal to us. They will have no excuse to offer for how they boast. 13 Such people are false apostles claiming that God has sent them. They are workers who always tell lies, and they are pretending to be apostles of Christ.

ULB:

12 And what I do I will keep doing, in order that I may take away the claim for criticizing me and the claim for which they want to boast—that they are found to be doing the same work that we are doing. 13 For such people are false apostles and deceitful workers. They disguise themselves as apostles of Christ.

translationWords:

- cut off
- boast, boastful
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- false prophet
- apostle, apostleship
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - As Paul continues to affirm his apostleship, he talks about false apostles.
- **in order that I may take away the claim** - Paul speaks of a false claim that his enemies state as if it were something that he can carry way. AT: “so that I might make it impossible” (See: Metaphor)
- **for which they want to boast** - While Paul’s boast was that he “freely preached the gospel” (11:7), his enemies boasted that they could speak well (11:6).
- **they are found to be doing the same work that we are doing** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that people will think that they are like us” (See: Active or Passive)
- **For such people** - “I do what I do because people like them”
- **deceitful workers** - “dishonest workers”
- **disguise themselves as apostles** - “are not apostles, but they try to make themselves look like apostles”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:14-15

UDB:

14 They should not surprise us. Even Satan pretends to be an angel shining with the light of God's presence. 15 His servants also pretend to serve God; they pretend to be good. God will punish them as they deserve.

ULB:

14 And this is no surprise, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. 15 It is no great surprise if his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness. Their fate will be what their deeds deserve.

translationWords:

- Satan, devil, evil one
- angel, archangel
- light
- servant, slave, slavery
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **And this is no surprise ... It is no great surprise if** - By stating this in a negative form Paul is emphasizing that the Corinthians should expect to meet many "false apostles" (11:13). AT: "And we should expect this ... We should certainly expect that" (See: Litotes)
- **Satan disguises himself as an angel of light** - "Satan is not an angel of light, but he tries to make himself look like an angel of light"
- **his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness** - "his servants are not servants of righteousness, but they try to make themselves look like servants of righteousness"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:16-18

UDB:

16 No one should think I am a fool. But if you really do think of me as a fool, then I will go ahead and continue to praise myself a little more. 17 When I speak in this way, this is not the way the Lord speaks of me; it is simply me speaking like a fool. 18 Many have been proud about who they are in this life. Well, I can be that way, too.

ULB:

16 I say again: Let no one think I am a fool. But if you do, receive me as a fool so I may boast a little.
17 What I am saying about this boastful confidence is not condoned by the Lord, but I am speaking as a fool. 18 Since many people boast according to the flesh, I will also boast.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- boast, boastful
- confidence, confident
- Lord
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- flesh

translationNotes:

- **receive me as a fool so I may boast a little** - “receive me as you would receive a fool: let me talk, and consider my boasting the words of a fool”
- **What I am saying about this boastful confidence is not condoned by the Lord** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Lord does not condone what I am saying about this boastful confidence” or “The Lord has not told me that he approves of what I am saying about this boastful confidence” (See: Active or Passive)
- **according to the flesh** - Here the metonym “flesh” refers to man in his sinful nature and his achievements. AT: “about their own human achievements” (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:19-21

UDB:

[19] You will certainly gladly put up with my foolishness, since you are so wise yourselves! [20] I say this because you have tolerated leaders who treated you like slaves; you followed those who created divisions among you; you let your leaders take advantage of you; you permitted your leaders to imagine themselves to be better than others; and you permit them to slap you in the face but you do nothing about it. And do you really call yourselves wise? [21] I could be ashamed, because when we were with you, we were too timid to treat you like that.

ULB:

[19] For you gladly put up with fools. You are wise yourselves! [20] For you put up with someone if he enslaves you, if he consumes you, if he takes advantage of you, if he considers himself better than you, or if he slaps you in the face. [21] I will say to our shame that we were too weak to do that. Yet if anyone boasts—I am speaking like a fool—I too will boast.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom
- enslave, in bondage
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- boast, boastful

translationNotes:

- **put up with fools** - "accept me when I act like a fool." See how a similar phrase was translated in 11:1.
- **You are wise yourselves!** - Paul is shaming the Corinthians by using irony. AT: "You think you are wise, but you are not!" (See: Irony)
- **enslaves you** - Paul speaks of rules that God did not make but some people force others to obey as if it were slavery. AT: "makes you follow rules they have thought of" (See: Metaphor and Hyperbole)
- **he consumes you** - Paul speaks of the super-apostles' taking people's material resources as if they were eating the people themselves. AT: "he takes all your property" (See: Metaphor)
- **takes advantage of you** - A person takes advantage of another person by knowing things that the other person does not and using that knowledge to help himself and harm the other person.
- **I will say to our shame that we were too weak to do that** - "I shamefully admit that we were not bold enough to treat you like that." Paul is using irony to tell the Corinthians that it

was not because he was weak that he treated them well. AT: “I am not ashamed to say that we had the power to harm you, but we treated you well” (See: Irony)

- **Yet if anyone boasts ... I too will boast** - “Whatever anyone boasts about ... I will dare to boast about it also”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:22-23

UDB:

[22] Are those people Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? So am I. [23] Are they servants of Christ?—I speak like a man who is out of his mind! I worked harder than any of them; I have been in more prisons than they; I have had more severe beatings than they, and I have faced death more times that than they have.

ULB:

[22] Are they Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of Abraham? So am I. [23] Are they servants of Christ? (I speak as though I were out of my mind.) I am more. I have been in even more hard work, in far more prisons, in beatings beyond measure, in facing many dangers of death.

translationWords:

- Hebrew
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- descendant, descended from
- Abraham, Abram
- servant, slave, slavery
- Christ, Messiah
- mind
- hard, hardness, harden
- works, deeds, work, acts
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - As Paul continues to confirm his apostleship, he states specific things that have happened to him since he became a believer.
- **Are they Hebrews? ... Are they Israelites? ... Are they descendants of Abraham? ... Are they servants of Christ? (I speak as though I were out of my mind.) I am more** - Paul is asking questions the Corinthians might be asking and then answering them to emphasize that he is as much a Jew as the super-apostles are. You should keep the question-and-answer form if possible. AT: "They want you to think they are important and to believe what they say because they are Hebrews and Israelites and descendants of Abraham. Well, so am I. They say they are servants of Christ—I speak as though I were out of my mind—but I am more"
- **as though I were out of my mind** - "as though I were unable to think well"

- **I am more** - You can make clear the understood information. AT: “I am more a servant of Christ than they are” (See: Ellipsis)
- **in even more hard work** - “I have worked harder”
- **in far more prisons** - “I have been in prisons more often”
- **in beatings beyond measure** - This is an idiom, and is exaggerated to emphasize how often he had been beaten. AT: “I have been beaten very many times” (See: Idiom and Hyperbole)
- **in facing many dangers of death** - “and I have almost died many times”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:24-26

UDB:

[24] Five times the Jews punished me with the thirty-nine lashes, beating me each time until I nearly died. [25] Three times I was beaten by my captors with wooden rods. Once they threw stones at me to kill me. Three different ships I was on were lost to the storms, and I have spent a night and a day in the open ocean hoping for rescue. [26] I have been on many journeys and I have known dangers in rivers, I have been in danger from robbers, danger from my own people, the Jews, danger from the non-Jews, danger in cities, danger in the wilderness, danger in the ocean, danger from false brothers who betrayed us.

ULB:

[24] From Jews I received five times the “forty lashes minus one.” [25] Three times I was beaten with rods. Once I was stoned. Three times I was shipwrecked. I have spent a night and a day on the open sea. [26] I have been on frequent journeys, in danger from rivers, in danger from robbers, in danger from my own people, in danger from the Gentiles, in danger in the city, in danger in the wilderness, in danger at sea, in danger from false brothers.

translationWords:

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Gentile
- desert, wilderness

translationNotes:

- **forty lashes minus one** - This was a common expression for being whipped 39 times. Forty (40) lashes was assumed to kill a person.
- **I was beaten with rods** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people beat me with wooden rods” (See: Active or Passive)
- **I was stoned** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people threw stones at me until they thought I was dead” (See: Active or Passive)
- **I have spent a night and a day on the open sea** - Paul was referring to floating in the water after the ship he was on sank.
- **in danger from false brothers** - The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “and in danger from people who claimed to be brothers in Christ, but who betrayed us” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:27-29

UDB:

[27] I have worked hard and been in hardship, often gone without sleep; I have been hungry and thirsty with nothing to eat. I have been cold and without enough clothing. [28] In addition to all that, I worry every day about how well the churches are doing. [29] There is no fellow believer who is weak, without me being weak with him. There is no fellow believer who has led another person into sin, without me being very angry about it.

ULB:

[27] I have been at hard work and in hardship, in many sleepless nights, in hunger and thirst, often in fasting, in cold and nakedness. [28] Apart from everything else, there is the daily pressure on me of my anxiety for all the churches. [29] Who is weak, and I am not weak? Who has been caused to stumble, and I do not burn?

translationWords:

- hard, hardness, harden
- works, deeds, work, acts
- church, Church
- stumble

translationNotes:

- **and nakedness** - Here Paul exaggerates to show his need of clothing. AT: “and without enough clothing to keep me warm” (See: Hyperbole)
- **Who is weak, and I am not weak?** - This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Whenever anyone is weak, I feel that weakness also.” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **there is the daily pressure on me of my anxiety** - Paul knows that God will hold him responsible for how well the churches obey God and speaks of that knowledge as if it were a heavy object pushing him down. AT: “I know that God will hold me accountable for the spiritual growth of all the churches, and so I always feel like a heavy object is pushing me down” (See: Metaphor)
- **Who is weak, and I am not weak?** - The word “weak” is probably a metaphor for a spiritual condition, but no one is sure what Paul is speaking of, so it is best to use the same word here. AT: “I am weak whenever anyone else is weak.” (See: Metaphor)
- **Who has been caused to stumble, and I do not burn?** - Paul uses this question to express his anger when a fellow believer is caused to sin. Here his anger is spoken of as a burning inside him. This rhetorical question can be translated as statement. AT: “Whenever anyone causes a brother to sin, I am angry.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

- **has been caused to stumble** - Paul speaks of sin as if it were tripping over something and then falling. AT: “has been led to sin” or “has thought that God would permit him to sin because of something that someone else did” (See: Metaphor)
- **I do not burn** - Paul speaks of being angry about sin as if he had a fire inside his body. AT: “I am not angry” about the situation. (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:30-31

UDB:

30 If I must boast, I will boast only about things like these, things that show how weak I am. 31 The God and Father of the Lord Jesus Christ—may everyone and everything give him praise!—he knows I am not lying!

ULB:

30 If I must boast, I will boast about what shows my weaknesses. 31 The God and Father of the Lord Jesus, the one who is praised forever, knows that I am not lying!

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- praise
- forever

translationNotes:

- **what shows my weaknesses** - “what shows how weak I am”
- **I am not lying** - Paul is using litotes to emphasize that he is telling the truth. AT: “I am telling the absolute truth” (See: Litotes)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 11:32-33

UDB:

[32] At the city of Damascus, the governor under King Aretas put a guard around the city, hoping to arrest me. [33] But my friends put me in a basket and let me down me out of the city, through a window in the wall, and I escaped from him.

ULB:

[32] At Damascus, the governor under King Aretas was guarding the city of Damascus to arrest me. [33] But I was lowered in a basket through a window in the wall, and I escaped from his hands.

translationWords:

- Damascus
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- basket

translationNotes:

- **the governor under King Aretas was guarding the city** - "the governor whom King Aretas had appointed had told men to guard the city"
- **to arrest me** - "so that they might catch and arrest me"
- **I was lowered in a basket** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "some people put me in a basket and lowered me to the ground" (See: Active or Passive)
- **from his hands** - Paul uses the governor's hands as metonymy for the governor. AT: "from the governor" (See: Metonymy)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 11 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 11 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Paul continues his defense

Special concepts in this chapter

Paul's Vision

Paul continues his defense as an apostle by telling about a wonderful vision of heaven he had. It was so great, God gave him a physical handicap to keep him humble. When Paul was with the Corinthians, he proved himself to be an apostle by his powerful deeds. He has not ever taken anything from them and now that he is coming for the third time, he will still not take anything. He hopes that when he visits, he does not want to be harsh with them. (See: heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly and apostle, apostleship)

Third heaven

Many scholars believe this is a reference to the dwelling place of God. This is because Scripture uses the term "heaven" in reference to the sky (the "first" heaven) and in reference to the universe (the "second" heaven).

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

Paul uses many rhetorical question defending himself against accusations from his enemies: "For how were you less important than the rest of the churches, except that I was not a burden to you?" "Did Titus take advantage of you? Did we not walk in the same way? Did we not walk in the same steps?" and "Do you think all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you?" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Sarcasm

Paul uses sarcasm, a special type of irony, when he reminds them how he had helped them at no cost. He sys, "Forgive me for this wrong!" He also uses regular irony when he says:"But, since I am so crafty, I am the one who caught you by deceit" to introduce his defense against this accusation by showing how impossible it was to be true. (See: Irony).

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 12:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 12:1-2

UDB:

[1] Even though it does no good, I must continue to defend myself, so I will continue by boasting about some visions that the Lord gave me. [2] Fourteen years ago God took me, a man who is joined to Christ, up to the highest heaven—although only God knows whether he took me up only in my spirit or in my body, too.

ULB:

12 [1] I must boast, but nothing is gained by it. But I will go on to visions and revelations from the Lord. [2] I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago who—whether in the body or out of the body, I do not know, God knows—was caught up into the third heaven.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- vision
- reveal, revelation
- Lord
- Christ, Messiah
- body
- God
- caught up, caught up with
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - In defending his apostleship from God, Paul continues to state specific things that have happened to him since he became a believer.
- **I will go on to** - "I will continue talking, but now about"
- **visions and revelations from the Lord** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul uses the words "visions" and "revelations" to mean the same thing in hendiadys for emphasis. AT: "things that the Lord has allowed only me to see" or 2) Paul is speaking of two different things. AT: "secret things that the Lord has let me see with my eyes and other secrets that he has told me about" (See: Hendiadys)
- **I know a man in Christ** - Paul is actually speaking of himself as if he were speaking of someone else, but this should be translated literally if possible.
- **whether in the body or out of the body, I do not know** - Paul continues to describe himself as if this happened to another person. "I do not know if this man was in his physical body or in his spiritual body"

- **God knows** - “only God knows”
- **the third heaven** - This refers to the dwelling place of God rather than the sky or outer space (the planets, stars, and the universe).

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:3-5

UDB:

[3] And I—whether in my body or only in my spirit, God alone knows— [4] I was taken up into a place in heaven called paradise. There I heard things that were so holy and that I am not able to tell them to you. [5] I can boast about that—but God made all that happen, not I. For myself, I can be proud only about how God works in me, a weak man.

ULB:

[3] And I know that this man—whether in the body, or out of the body, I do not know, God knows— [4] was caught up into paradise and heard things too sacred for anyone to say. [5] On behalf of such a person I will boast. But on behalf of myself I will not boast, except about my weaknesses.

translationWords:

- body
- God
- sacred
- boast, boastful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Paul continues to speak of himself as though he were speaking of someone else.
- **this man ... was caught up into paradise** - This can be stated in active form. AT: Possible meanings are 1) "God took this man ... into paradise" or 2) "an angel took this man ... into paradise." If possible, it would be best not to name the one who took the man: "someone took ... paradise" or "they took ... paradise."
- **caught up** - suddenly and forcefully held and taken
- **paradise** - Possible meanings are 1) heaven or 2) the third heaven or 3) a special place in heaven.
- **of such a person** - "of that person"
- **I will not boast, except about my weaknesses** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: "I will boast only of my weaknesses" (See: Double Negatives)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:6-7

UDB:

[6] Even if I kept on boasting about myself, I would not be foolish, because I would be saying only what was true. However, I will boast no more, so that you can judge me only by what you hear me say, or by what you already know about me. [7] So I will leave the subject of the amazing visions that God gave me; except that I should tell you that God sent me something very difficult to bear, a device from Satan, in order to cause me to suffer. God did this so that I would not become proud about the visions I saw.

ULB:

[6] If I wanted to boast, I would not be foolish, for I would be speaking the truth. But I will keep from boasting, so that no one will think more of me than what is seen in me or heard from me. [7] I will also keep from boasting because of the extraordinary kind of those revelations. Therefore, so I would not be puffed up with pride, a thorn in the flesh was given to me, a messenger from Satan to harass me, so I would not become too proud.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- fool, foolish, folly
- true, truth, come true
- reveal, revelation
- puffed up
- proud, pride, prideful
- flesh
- messenger
- Satan, devil, evil one

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - As Paul defends his apostleship from God, he tells of the weakness that God gave him to keep him humble.
- **General Information:** - When Paul speaks of his “thorn in the flesh,” he reveals that he is the “man” he spoke of in 12:2-5.
- **heard from me. I will also keep from boasting because of the extraordinary kind of those revelations. Therefore, so I would not be puffed up with pride, a thorn** - Another possible meaning is “heard from me. Therefore, so I would not be puffed up with pride because of the extraordinary kind of those revelations, a thorn.”
- **will think more of me than what is seen** - “gives me more credit than what is seen”

- **because of the extraordinary kind of those revelations** - “because those revelations were so different from anything anyone else had ever seen”
- **Therefore, so I would not be puffed up with pride** - “To keep me from being full of pride”
- **puffed up** - filled with air and so larger than is normal
- **a thorn in the flesh** - Here Paul’s physical problems are compared to a “thorn” piercing his “flesh.” AT: affliction” or “a physical problem” (See: Metaphor)
- **messenger from Satan** - “servant of Satan”
- **to harass me** - “to torment me”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:8-10

UDB:

[8] I prayed three times to the Lord about this matter; each time I begged him to take this away from me. [9] But he said to me, "No, I will not take this away from you. All you need is for me to love you and be with you, because I do my most powerful work in you when you are weak." That is why I would rather be proud of my weakness, so that Christ's power can come and make me strong. [10] I can face anything because Christ is with me. It may be that I must be weak, or that others might treat me with scorn, or that I must have great hardships, or that others will try to kill me. It may be that I will continue to suffer hardships of various kinds. In any case, when my power is gone, then I am at my strongest.

ULB:

[8] Three times I begged the Lord about this, for him to take it away from me. [9] And he said to me, "My grace is enough for you, for power is made perfect in weakness." So I would much rather boast about my weakness, so that the power of Christ might reside on me. [10] Therefore I am content for Christ's sake in weaknesses, in insults, in troubles, in persecutions and distressing situations. For whenever I am weak, then I am strong.

translationWords:

- Lord
- grace, gracious
- power, powers
- perfect
- boast, boastful
- Christ, Messiah
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- persecute, persecution

translationNotes:

- **Three times** - Paul put these words at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that he had prayed many times about his "thorn" (12:7).
- **Lord about this** - "Lord about this thorn in the flesh," or "Lord about this affliction"
- **My grace is enough for you** - "I will be kind to you, and that is all you need"
- **for power is made perfect in weakness** - "for my power works best when you are weak"
- **the power of Christ might reside on me** - Paul speaks of Christ's power as if it were a tent built over him. Possible meanings are 1) "people might see that I have the power of Christ" or 2) "I might truly have the power of Christ." (See: Metaphor)

- **I am content for Christ's sake in weaknesses, in insults, in troubles, in persecutions and distressing situations** - Possible meanings are 1) "I am content in weakness, insults, troubles, persecutions, and distressing situations if these things come because I belong to Christ" or 2) "I am content in weakness ... if these things cause more people to know Christ."
- **in weaknesses** - "when I am weak"
- **in insults** - "when people try to make me angry by saying that I am a bad person"
- **in troubles** - "when I am suffering"
- **distressing situations** - "when there is trouble"
- **For whenever I am weak, then I am strong** - Paul is saying that when he is no longer strong enough to do what needs to be done, Christ, who is more powerful than Paul could ever be, will work through Paul to do what needs to be done. However, it would be best to translate these words literally, if your language allows.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:11-13

UDB:

[11] When I write this way, I am praising myself. But I had to do so, because you should have had confidence in me. I am just as good as these "super-apostles," even though I am really nothing at all. [12] I gave you the true signs of being an authentic apostle—miracles that I did very patiently among you: wonderful miracles that proved that I truly serve Jesus Christ. [13] You certainly were just as important as all the other churches! The only way you were different was that I received no money from you as I did from them. Forgive me that I did not ask this from you!

ULB:

[11] I have become a fool! You forced me to this, for I should have been praised by you. For I was not at all inferior to the so-called super-apostles, even though I am nothing. [12] The true signs of an apostle were performed among you with complete patience, signs and wonders and mighty deeds. [13] For how were you less important than the rest of the churches, except that I was not a burden to you? Forgive me for this wrong!

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- praise
- true, truth, come true
- sign, proof, reminder
- apostle, apostleship
- patient, patience
- mighty, might
- church, Church
- burden
- forgive, forgiveness
- wrong, mistreat, hurt

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul reminds the believers in Corinth of the true signs of an apostle and of his humility before them to strengthen them.
- **I have become a fool** - "I am acting like a fool"
- **You forced me to this** - "You forced me to talk this way"
- **I should have been praised by you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "it is praise that you should have given me" (See: Active or Passive)
- **praised** - Possible meanings are 1) "praise" (03:1) or 2) "recommend" (04:2).

- **For I was not at all inferior to** - By using the negative form, Paul is saying strongly that those Corinthians who think that he is inferior are wrong. AT: “For I am just as good as” (See: Litotes)
- **super-apostles** - Paul uses irony here to show that they are less important then they claim to be. AT: “those teachers whom some think are better than anyone else.” See how this is translated in 11:05. (See: Irony)
- **The true signs of an apostle were performed** - This can be stated in active form, with emphasis on the “signs.” AT: “It is the true signs of an apostle that I performed” (See: Active or Passive)
- **signs ... signs** - Use the same word both times.
- **signs and wonders and mighty deeds** - These are the “true signs of an apostle” that Paul performed “with complete patience.”
- **how were you less important than the rest of the churches, except that ... you?** - Paul is emphasizing that the Corinthians are wrong to accuse him of wanting to do them harm. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I treated you the same way I treated all the other churches, except that ... you.” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **I was not a burden to you** - “I did not ask you for money or other things I needed”
- **Forgive me for this wrong!** - Paul is being ironic to shame the Corinthians. Both he and they know that he has done them no wrong, but they have been treating him as though he has wronged them. (See: Irony)
- **this wrong** - not asking them for money and other things he needed

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:14-15

UDB:

14 So listen to this! I am now ready to visit you for a third time, and on this trip, as on all the others, I will not ask you for any money. I do not want anything you have. What I want is you! You know the principle that we all follow in our families: the children should not pay the expenses of their parents, but the parents save up to pay the expenses of the children. 15 I will most happily do everything I can for you, even if it means losing my life. If this means that I love you more than ever, surely you should love me more than ever as well.

ULB:

14 Look! I am ready to come to you a third time. I will not be a burden to you, for I do not want what is yours. I want you. For children should not save up for the parents. Instead, the parents should save up for the children. 15 I will most gladly spend and be spent for your souls. If I love you more, am I to be loved less?

translationWords:

- burden
- children, child
- soul
- love

translationNotes:

- **I want you** - The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "What I want is that you love and accept me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- **children should not save up for the parents** - Young children are not responsible for saving money or other goods to give to their healthy parents.
- **I will most gladly spend and be spent** - Paul speaks of his work and his physical life as if it were money that he or God could spend. AT: "I will gladly do any work and gladly allow God to permit people to kill me" (See: Metaphor)
- **for your souls** - The word "souls" is a metonym for the people themselves. AT: "for you" or "so you will live well" (See: Metonymy)
- **If I love you more, am I to be loved less?** - This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "If I love you so much, you should not love me so little." or "If ... much, you should love me more than you do." (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **more** - It is not clear what it is that Paul's love is "more" than. It is probably best to use "very much" or a "so much" that can be compared to "so little" later in the sentence.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:16-18

UDB:

16 And so, someone might say that although I did not ask you for money, I tricked you into letting me myself pay for everything I needed. 17 Well, I never cheated you by using someone else I sent to you, did I? 18 For example, I sent Titus and the other brother to you, but they did not ask you to support them, did they? Titus never made you pay his expenses, did he? Titus and the other brother treated you the same as I did, is this not so? We lived our lives in the same way; you never had to pay anything for us.

ULB:

16 But as it is, I did not burden you. But, since I am so crafty, I am the one who caught you by deceit. 17 Did I take advantage of you by anyone I sent to you? 18 I urged Titus to go to you, and I sent the other brother with him. Did Titus take advantage of you? Did we not walk in the same way? Did we not walk in the same steps?

translationWords:

- burden
- Titus
- brother
- walk

translationNotes:

- **But, since I am so crafty, I am the one who caught you by deceit** - Paul uses irony to shame the Corinthians who think he lied to them even if he did not ask them for money. AT: “but others think I was deceptive and used trickery” (See: Irony)
- **Did I take advantage of you by anyone I sent to you?** - Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer is no. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “No one that I sent to you has taken advantage of you!” (See (Rhetorical Question)
- **Did Titus take advantage of you?** - Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer is no. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Titus did not take advantage of you.” (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **Did we not walk in the same way?** - Paul speaks of living as if it were walking on a road. Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer to the question is yes. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “We all have the same attitude and live alike.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

- **Did we not walk in the same steps?** - Paul speaks of living as if it were walking on a road. Both Paul and the Corinthians know the answer to the question is yes. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “We all do things the same way.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:19

UDB:

[19] You do not really think that I have been trying to defend myself in this letter, do you? God knows that I am joined to Christ, and that I have written everything in order to strengthen you in trusting him.

ULB:

[19] Do you think all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you? In the sight of God, we have in Christ been saying everything for your strengthening.

translationWords:

- God
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **Do you think all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you?** - Paul is asking a rhetorical question, AT: "It is wrong for you to think that all of this time we have been defending ourselves to you." Some translate this as a statement. AT: "You have been thinking all this time that we have been defending ourselves to you." (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **In the sight of God** - Paul speaks of God knowing everything Paul does as if God were physically present and observed everything Paul said and did. AT: "Before God" or "With God as witness" or "In the presence of God" (See: Metaphor)
- **for your strengthening** - "to strengthen you." Paul speaks of knowing how to obey God and desiring to obey him as if it were physical growth. AT: "so that you would know God and obey him better" (See: Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 12:20-21

UDB:

[20] But when I come to you, I may not find you as I wished. When I come you may not want to listen to me. I fear that you are arguing a lot among yourselves, that some of you are jealous of one another, and that some of you become very angry with each other. I fear that some of you are putting yourselves first, that you are talking about each other, and that some of you are very selfish. [21] I am afraid that when I come to you and see you, God will humble me. I am afraid that I will have to mourn for many of who disobeyed God earlier and have not stopped sinning in various sexual ways.

ULB:

[20] For I fear that when I come I may not find you as I wish. I fear that you might not find me as you wish. I fear that there may be arguments, jealousy, outbursts of anger, selfish ambition, gossip, pride, and disorder. [21] I fear that when I come back, my God might humble me before you. I fear that I might be grieved by many of those who have sinned before now, and who did not repent of the impurity and sexual immorality and lustful indulgence that they practiced.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- jealous, jealousy
- angry, anger
- gossip
- proud, pride, prideful
- God
- humble, humility
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- repent, repentance
- sexual immorality
- lust

translationNotes:

- **I may not find you as I wish** - “I may not like what I find” or “I may not like what I see you doing”
- **you might not find me as you wish** - “you might not like what you see in me”
- **there may be arguments, jealousy, outbursts of anger, selfish ambition, gossip, pride, and disorder** - The abstract nouns arguments, jealousy, outbursts of anger, selfish ambition, gossip, pride, and disorder” can be translated using verbs. Possible meanings are 1) “some

of you will be arguing with us, jealous of us, suddenly becoming very angry with us, talking about our private lives, being proud, and opposing us as we try to lead you" or 2) "some of you will be arguing with each other, jealous of each other, suddenly becoming very angry with each other, talking about each other's private lives, being proud, and opposing those whom God has chosen to lead" (See: Abstract Nouns)

- **I might be grieved by many of those who have sinned before now** - "I will be grieved because many of them have not given up their old sins"
- **did not repent of the impurity and sexual immorality and lustful indulgence** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul is saying almost the same thing three times for emphasis. AT: "did not stop commiting the sexual sins that they practiced" or 2) Paul is speaking of three different sins. (See: Parallelism)
- **of the impurity** - The abstract noun impurity can be translated using a modified noun phrase. AT: "of secretly thinking about and desiring things that do not please God" (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **of the ... sexual immorality** - The abstract noun "immorality" can be translated using a modified noun phrase. AT: "of doing sexually immoral deeds" (See: Abstract Nouns)
- **of the ... lustful indulgence** - The abstract noun "indulgence" can be translated using a verb phrase. AT: "of ... doing things that satisfy immoral sexual desire" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 12 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 12 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In 13:1-10, Paul finishes his defense before concluding the letter with a final greetings a blessing.

Special concepts in this chapter

Preparation

Paul is giving instructions in preparation of his upcoming visit to Corinth. He is hoping to avoid having to exercise church discipline on anyone and can have a joyous visit. (See: disciple)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Power and Weakness

These two figures are repeatedly used in this chapter. The are intended to contrast with each other. The translator should attempt to use terms that are understood to be opposites of each other.

"In the faith"

Scholars are divided over the meaning of this phrase. Some believe Christians are to test themselves to see whether their actions align with their faith. Other believe Christians should look at their actions and question whether they are genuinely saved. From the context, it appears that the former is probable. (See: faith and save, safe).

Links:

- **2 Corinthians 13:01 Notes**

2 Corinthians 13:1-2

UDB:

[1] This is the third time I am coming to you to deal with these matters. The principle in dealing with these issues is what the scripture says: "Every accusation against another must be based on the testimony of two or three persons," not just one. [2] When I was there on the second visit I said to those who had sinned and who had been charged before the church, and to the entire church, and I will say it again: I will not overlook these charges.

ULB:

13 [1] This is the third time that I am coming to you. "Every accusation must be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses." [2] I have already said to those who sinned before and to all the rest when I was there the second time, and I say it again: When I come again, I will not spare them.

translationWords:

- witness, eyewitness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul establishes that Christ is speaking through him and that Paul is wanting to restore them, encourage them, and unify them.
- **Every accusation must be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses** - This can be stated as active. AT: "Believe that someone has done something wrong only after two or three people have said the same thing" (See: Active or Passive)
- **all the rest** - "all you other people"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13:3-4

UDB:

[3] I tell you this because you are looking for proof that Christ is speaking through me. He is not weak in dealing with you; instead, he is working in you by his great power. [4] We learn from Christ's example, because they crucified him when he was weak, yet God has made him alive again. And we, too, are weak as we live and follow his example, but with him, God will strengthen us as we talk with you about these sins that some of you have committed.

ULB:

[3] I tell you this because you are looking for evidence that Christ is speaking through me. He is not weak toward you. Instead, he is powerful in you. [4] For he was crucified in weakness, but he is alive by God's power. For we also are weak in him, but we will live with him by the power of God among you.

translationWords:

- Christ, Messiah
- power, powers
- crucify
- life, live, living, alive
- God

translationNotes:

- **he was crucified** - This can be made active. AT: "they crucified him" (See: Active or Passive)
- **but we will live with him by the power of God** - God gives us the power and ability to live life in and with him.

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13:5-6

UDB:

[5] It is yourselves whom you must examine and see how you live. You must look for evidence that you trust in how God loves you and has mercy on you. It is you whom you must put yourself to the test and ask if Jesus Christ lives within you? He lives in every one of you, unless, of course, you fail this test. [6] And I hope that you will find that we pass the test and Christ lives in us.

ULB:

[5] Examine yourselves to see if you are in the faith. Test yourselves. Do you not realize that Jesus Christ is in you? He is, unless you are not approved. [6] And I am confident that you will find that we are not unapproved.

translationWords:

- faith
- test
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- confidence, confident

translationNotes:

- **Test yourselves ... not approved ... unapproved** - The words "approved" and "unapproved" have to do with passing or not passing the "test."
- **Do you not realize that Jesus Christ is in you?** - Paul asks a question to emphasize his point. AT: "You should know that Jesus Christ is in you!" or "Jesus Christ is in you. You should know this already!" (See: Rhetorical Question)
- **in you** - Possible meanings are 1) living inside each individual (UDB) or 2) "among you," part of and the most important member of the group.
- **we are not unapproved** - This can be stated as a positive. AT: "we are certainly approved" (See: Double Negatives)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13:7-8

UDB:

[7] Now we pray to God that you may not do anything that is wrong. We pray for this, not because we want to seem better than you by passing that test. Instead, we want you to know and do the right things. Even if we seem to have failed, we want you to succeed. [8] The truth controls what we do; we cannot do anything against the truth.

ULB:

[7] Now we pray to God that you may not do any wrong. I do not pray that we may appear to have passed the test. Instead, I pray that you may do what is right, although we may seem to have failed the test. [8] For we are not able to do anything against the truth, but only for the truth.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- God
- wrong, mistreat, hurt
- test
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **that you may not do any wrong** - "that you will not sin at all" or "that you will not refuse to listen to us when we correct you." Paul is emphasizing the opposite with his statement. AT: "that you will do everything right" (See: Litotes)
- **to have passed the test** - "to be great teachers and live the truth"
- **we are not able to do anything against the truth** - "we are not able to keep people from learning the truth"
- **truth, but only for the truth** - "truth; everything we do will enable people to learn the truth"

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13:9-10

UDB:

[9] We have joy when we are weak and you are strong. We pray that you may always trust and obey God completely. [10] I am away from you now as I write this to you. When I come to you, I do not have to deal harshly with you. Because the Lord made me an apostle, I prefer to encourage you and not to make you weaker.

ULB:

[9] For we rejoice when we are weak and you are strong. We also pray that you may be made complete. [10] I write these things while I am away from you, so that when I am with you I do not have to deal harshly with you in the use of my authority—which the Lord gave to me, so that I may build you up, and not tear you down.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- pray, prayer
- authority
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **may be made complete** - “may become spiritually mature”
- **in the use of my authority** - “when I use my authority”
- **so that I may build you up, and not tear you down** - Paul speaks of helping the Corinthians to know Christ better as if he were constructing a building. AT: “to help you become better followers of Christ and not to discourage you so you stop following him.” See how these words were translated in Metaphor)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13:11-12

UDB:

[11] The last thing, brothers and sisters, is this: Rejoice! Act and behave better than you have been acting, and allow the Lord to give you courage. Agree with each other and live in peace together. If you do these things, God, who loves you and brings you peace, will be with you. [12] Welcome each other in a way that tells everybody how much you love each other.

ULB:

[11] Finally, brothers, rejoice! Work for restoration, be encouraged, agree with one another, live in peace. And the God of love and peace will be with you. [12] Greet each other with a holy kiss.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- works, deeds, work, acts
- restore, restoration
- encourage, encouragement
- life, live, living, alive
- peace, peaceful
- God
- love
- holy, holiness
- kiss

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul closes his letter to the Corinthian believers.
- **Work for restoration** - “Work toward maturity”
- **agree with one another** - ” live in harmony with one another”
- **with a holy kiss** - “with Christian love”

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

2 Corinthians 13:13-14

UDB:

13 All of us here, whom God has set apart for himself, greet you. 14 May the Lord Jesus Christ act kindly toward you, may God love you, and may the Holy Spirit be with you all.

ULB:

13 All of the believers greet you.[1]Some translations combine verse 13 with verse 12 and number verse 14 as verse 13.

14 May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with all of you.

translationWords:

- believer
- grace, gracious
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- love
- God
- fellowship
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

translationNotes:

- **the believers** - “those whom God has set apart for himself” (UDB)

Links:

- Introduction to 2 Corinthians
- 2 Corinthians 13 General Notes
- 2 Corinthians 13 Translation Questions

translationQuestions

2 Corinthians 1

Q? Who wrote this epistle?

A. Paul and Timothy wrote the epistle. [1:1]

Q? To whom was the epistle written?

A. It was written to the church of God which was at Corinth and to all the saints in the entire region of Achaia. [1:1]

Q? How does Paul describe God?

A. Paul describes God as the father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the father of mercies, and God of all comfort. [1:3]

Q? Why does God comfort us in our affliction?

A. He comforts us so that we are able to comfort those who are in affliction, with the same comfort with which we ourselves are comforted by God. [1:4]

Q? What trouble did Paul and his companions have in Asia?

A. They were completely crushed beyond what they could bear. They had the sentence of death on them. [1:8-9]

Q? For what reason was the sentence of death on Paul and his companions?

A. The sentence of death caused them to not put their trust in themselves, but instead to trust in God. [1:9]

Q? How did Paul say that the Corinthian church could help them?

A. Paul said the Corinthian church could help them by their prayer. [1:11]

Q? Of what did Paul say that he and his companions were proud?

A. They were proud of the testimony of their conscience, which is that they had conducted themselves in the world—and especially in dealing with the Corinthian church—with the holiness and sincerity that come from God, not according to earthly wisdom but by the grace of God. [1:12]

Q? What was Paul confident would happen on the day of our Lord Jesus?

A. He was confident that on that day Paul and his companions would be the reason for the pride of the Corinthian saints. [1:14]

Q? How many times was Paul planning to visit the Corinthian saints?

A. He was planning to visit them two times. [1:15]

Q? What is one reason that Christ gave us the Spirit in our hearts?

A. He gave the Spirit as a guarantee of what he would later give us. [1:22]

Q? Why did Paul not come to Corinth?

A. He did not come to Corinth so that he might spare them. [1:23]

Q? What did Paul say he and Timothy were and were not doing with the Corinthian church?

A. Paul said the were not trying to control what their faith should be, but they were working with the Corinthian church for their joy. [1:24]

---

2 Corinthians 2

Q? What circumstances was Paul trying to avoid by not coming to the Corinthian church?

A. Paul was avoiding coming to the Corinthian church in painful circumstances. [2:1]

Q? Why did Paul write as he did in his previous epistle to the Corinthian church?

A. He wrote as he did so that when he came to them he might not be hurt by those who should have made him rejoice. [2:3]

Q? When Paul wrote to the Corinthians before what was his state of mind?

A. He was in great affliction and anguish of heart. [2:4]

Q? Why did Paul write this letter to the Corinthian church?

A. He wrote to them so that they would know the depth of the love that he had for them. [2:4]

Q? What did Paul say the Corinthian saints should now do for the one they punished?

A. Paul said they should forgive and comfort that person. [2:6-7]

Q? Why did Paul say the Corinthian saints should forgive and comfort the one they had punished?

A. This was so that the one they had punished would not be overwhelmed by too much sorrow. [2:7]

Q? What is another reason Paul wrote to the Corinthian church?

A. Paul wrote to them to test them and to find out whether they were obedient in everything. [2:9]

Q? Why was it important for the Corinthian church to know that whoever they had forgiven was also forgiven by Paul and in the presence of Christ?

A. This was so that Satan would not trick them. [2:11]

Q? Why did Paul have no peace of mind when he went to the city of Troas?

A. He had no peace of mind because he couldn't find his brother Titus in Troas. [2:13]

Q? What did God do through Paul and his companions?

A. Through Paul and his companions God spread the sweet aroma of the knowledge of Christ everywhere. [2:14-15]

Q? How did Paul say that he and his companions were different from many people who sold the word of God for profit?

A. Paul and his companions were different in that they spoke with purity of motives, as sent from God, in the sight of God, speaking in Christ. [2:17]

---

2 Corinthians 3

Q? What letter of recommendation did Paul and his companions have?

A. The saints at Corinth were their letter of recommendation, known and read by all people. [3:2]

Q? What was the confidence that Paul and his companions had in God through Christ?

A. Their confidence was not in their own competence but in the adequacy that God provided them. [3:4-5]

Q? What was the basis of the new covenant of which God had qualified Paul and his companions to be servants?

A. The new covenant was based on the spirit which gives life, not the letter which kills. [3:6]

Q? Why could the people of Israel not look directly at Moses' face?

A. They could not look directly at his face because of the glory of his face, a glory that was fading. [3:7]

Q? Which will have more glory, the service of condemnation or the service of righteousness?

A. The service of righteousness abounds much more in glory. [3:9]

Q? What is the problem remains today for the people of Israel whenever the old covenant of Moses is read?

A. Their problem is their minds are closed and veil lies over their hearts. [3:15]

Q? How can Israel's mind be opened and the veil removed from their hearts?

A. Only when Israel turns to the Lord Christ are their minds opened and the veil lifted away. [03:14,16]

Q? What is present with the Spirit of the Lord?

A. Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom. [3:17]

Q? Into what are all those who are seeing the glory of the Lord being transformed?

A. They are being transformed into the same glorious likeness from one degree of glory into another. [3:18]

---

2 Corinthians 4

Q? Why did Paul and his companions not become discouraged?

A. They didn't become discouraged because of the ministry they had and because they had received mercy. [4:1]

Q? What were the ways that Paul and his companions had renounced?

A. They had renounced the ways that are shameful and hidden. They didn't live by craftiness and did not mishandle the word of God. [4:2]

Q? How did Paul and those like him recommend themselves to everyone's conscience in the sight of God?

A. They did this by presenting the truth. [4:2]

Q? To whom is the gospel veiled?

A. It is veiled to those who are perishing. [4:3]

Q? Why is the gospel veiled to those who are perishing?

A. It is veiled because the god of this world has blinded their unbelieving minds so they are not able to see the light of the gospel. [4:4]

Q? What did Paul and his companions proclaim about Jesus and about themselves?

A. They proclaimed Christ Jesus as Lord and themselves as the servants of the Corinthian church for Jesus' sake. [4:5]

Q? Why did Paul and his companions have this treasure in jars of clay?

A. They had this treasure in jars of clay so that it would be clear that the exceedingly great power belongs to God and not to them. [4:7]

Q? Why did Paul and his companions carry in their bodies the death of Jesus?

A. They carried the death of Jesus in their bodies so that the life of Jesus might also be shown in their bodies. [4:10]

Q? Who will be raised and brought into the presence of him who raised the Lord Jesus?

A. Paul and his companions as well as the Corinthian saints will be brought into the presence of him who raised the Lord Jesus. [4:14]

Q? What will happen as a result of grace spreading to many people?

A. As grace is spread to many people, thanksgiving will increase to the glory of God. [4:15]

Q? Why did Paul and his companions have reason to become discouraged?

A. They had reason to become discouraged because outwardly they were wasting away. [4:16]

Q? Why did Paul and his companions not become discouraged?

A. They didn't become discouraged because inwardly they were being renewed day by day. Also, their momentary, light affliction was preparing them for an eternal weight of glory that exceeds all measurement. Lastly, they were watching for unseen eternal things. [4:16-18]

---

2 Corinthians 5

Q? What did Paul say we still have if the our earthly dwelling is destroyed?

A. Paul said we have a building from God, a house not made by human hands, but an eternal house, in heaven. [5:1]

Q? Why did Paul say that we groan while we are in this tent?

A. Paul said this because while in this tent, we are burdened and want to be clothed, so that what is mortal may be absorbed by life. [5:4]

Q? What did God give to us as a pledge of what is to come?

A. God gave us the Spirit as a pledge of what is to come. [5:5]

Q? Would Paul rather be in the body, or at home with the Lord?

A. Paul said, ”we would rather be away from the body and at home with the Lord. [5:8]

Q? What was Paul’s goal?

A. Paul made it his goal to please the Lord. [5:9]

Q? Why did Paul make it his goal to please the Lord?

A. Paul made this his goal because we all must appear before the judgment seat of Christ to receive what is due for the things done in the body, whether for good or for bad. [5:10]

Q? Why did Paul and his companions persuade people?

A. They persuaded people because they knew the fear of the Lord. [5:11]

Q? Paul said they were not again recommending themselves to the Corinthian saints. What were they doing?

A. They were giving the Corinthian saints a reason to be proud of them, so that the Corinthian saints might have an answer for those who boasted about appearances but not about what was in the heart. [5:12]

Q? Since Christ died for all, what should those who live do?

A. They should live no longer for themselves, but for him who died and was raised. [5:15]

Q? By what standards do the saints no longer judge anyone?

A. The saints no longer judge anyone by human standards [5:16]

Q? What happens to anyone who is in Christ?

A. He is a new creation. The old things have passed away; it has become new. [5:17]

Q? When God through Christ reconciles people to himself what does God do for them?

A. God doesn't count their sinful stumblings against them and he entrusts to them the message of reconcilliation. [5:19]

Q? As appointed representatives of Christ, what is the plea of Paul and his companions to the Corinthians?

A. Their plea to the Corinthians is to be reconciled to God for the sake of Christ!. [5:20]

Q? Why did God make Christ become the sacrifice for our sin?

A. God did this so that in Christ we might become the righteousness of God. [5:21]

---

2 Corinthians 6

Q? What did Paul and his companions beg the Corinthians not to do?

A. They begged the Corinthians not to receive the grace of God to no effect. [6:1]

Q? When is the favorable time? When is the day of salvation?

A. Now is the favorable time. Now is the day of salvation. [6:2]

Q? Why did Paul and his companions not place a stumbling block in front of anyone?

A. They didn't put a stumbling block in front of anyone, for they did not want their ministry to be brought into disrepute. [6:3]

Q? What did the actions of Paul and his companions prove?

A. Their actions proved they were God's servants. [6:4]

Q? What are some of the things that Paul and his companions endured?

A. They endured affliction, distress, hardship, beatings, imprisonments, riots, hard work, sleepless nights and hunger. [6:4-5]

Q? Even though Paul and his companions were truthful, of what were they accused?

A. They were accused of being deceitful. [6:8]

Q? What exchange does Paul wish to make with the Corinthians?

A. Paul said their heart was wide open to the Corinthians and in fair exchange Paul wanted the Corinthians saints to open their hearts wide to Paul and his companions. [06:11,13]

Q? What reasons does Paul give as to why the Corinthian saints should not be tied together with unbelievers?

A. Paul gives the following reasons: What association does righteousness have with lawlessness? Does light have fellowship with darkness? Can Christ agree with Beliar? What share does a believer have together with an unbeliever? Can there be agreement between the temple of God and idols?. [6:14-16]

Q? What does the Lord say he will do for those who will, “Come out from among them and be set apart, and touch no unclean thing…”?

A. The Lord says he will welcome them. He will be a Father to them and they will be his sons and daughters. [6:17-18]

---

2 Corinthians 7

Q? Of what does Paul say we are supposed to cleanse ourselves?

A. We are supposed to cleanse ourselves of everything that makes us unclean in body and spirit. [7:1]

Q? What did Paul want the Corinthian saints to do for himself and his companions?

A. Paul wanted them to, “Make room for us!” [7:2]

Q? What words of encouragement did Paul have for the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul told the Corinthian saints they were in his and his companion’s hearts, to die together and to live together. Paul also told them he had great confidence in them and was proud of them. [7:3-4]

Q? What comfort did God give to Paul and his companions when they came to Macedonia and were troubled in every way – conflicts on the outside and fears on the inside?

A. God comforted them by the arrival of Titus, by the report of the comfort Titus had received from the Corinthian saints, and by the Corinthian’s great affection, their sorrow and deep concern for Paul. [7:6-7]

Q? What did Paul’s previous letter produce in the Corinthian saints?

A. The Corinthian saints experienced sadness, a Godly sorrow in response to Paul’s previous letter. [7:8-9]

Q? What did Godly sadness produce in the Corinthian saints?

A. Sadness brought about repentance in them. [7:9]

Q? Why did Paul say he wrote his previous letter to the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul said he wrote so that the earnestness of the Corinthians saints for Paul and his companions should be made known to the Corinthian saints in the sight of God. [7:12]

Q? Why was Titus joyful?

A. He was joyful because his spirit was refreshed by all the Corinthian saints. [7:13]

Q? Why did Titus' affection for the Corinthian saints grow even greater?

A. Titus' affection for the Corinthian saints grew even greater as he remembered the obedience of all the Corinthian saints as they welcomed him with fear and trembling. [7:15]

---

2 Corinthians 8

Q? What did Paul want the Corinthian brothers and sisters to know?

A. Paul wanted them to know about the grace of God that was given to the churches of Macedonia. [8:1]

Q? What did the churches of Macedonia do during a great test of affliction, and even though were extremely poor?

A. They produced great riches of generosity. [8:2]

Q? What did Paul urge Titus to do?

A. Paul urged Titus to bring to completion this act of grace on the part of the Corinthian saints. [8:6]

Q? In what else did the Corinthian believers abound?

A. They abounded in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in all diligence, and in their love for Paul. [8:7]

Q? What does Paul say is a good and acceptable thing?

A. Paul says it is a good and acceptable thing for the Corinthian saints to have an eagerness to do that work. [8:12]

Q? Does Paul want this task to be done so others may be relieved and the Corinthian saints may be burdened?

A. No. Paul said the Corinthian's abundance at that current time would supply what they (the other saints) needed. Also so that their abundance might also supply the Corinthian saint's need, and so that there might be fairness. [8:13-14]

Q? What did Titus do after God put into his heart the same earnest care that Paul had for the Corinthian saints?

A. Titus accepted Paul's appeal, and being very earnest about it, he came to the Corinthian saints of his own free will. [8:16-17]

Q? What was Paul careful to avoid in his actions concerning this act of generosity?

A. Paul was careful to avoid giving anyone reason to complain about his actions. [8:20]

Q? What did Paul tell the Corinthian saints to do concerning the brothers that were sent to them by the other churches?

A. Paul told the Corinthian church to show them their love, and to show them why Paul had boasted about the Corinthian church among the other churches. [8:24]

---

2 Corinthians 9

Q? About what does Paul say it is not necessary to write to the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul says it isn't necessary to write to them concerning the ministry for the saints. [9:1]

Q? Why did Paul send the brothers to Corinth?

A. He sent the brothers so that his boasting about the Corinthian saints might not be futile, and so that the Corinthian saints would be ready, as Paul said they would be. [9:3]

Q? Why did Paul think it necessary to urge the brothers to go to the Corinthian saints and make arrangements in advance for the gift the Corinthians had promised?

A. Paul thought is necessary so that Paul and his companions would not be put to shame in case any Macedonians came with Paul and found the Corinthians unprepared. Paul wanted the Corinthians to be ready with the gift as one freely offered and not because the Corinthians were forced to give it. [9:4-5]

Q? What does Paul say is the point of their giving?

A. Paul says the point is this: "The one who sow sparingly will reap sparingly, and the one who sows bountifully will also reap bountifully." [9:6]

Q? How is each one to give?

A. Each one is to give as he has planned in his heart—not out of compelling obligation or so as to have sorrow when he gives. [9:7]

Q? What was the one who provides seed for the sower and bread for food going to do for the Corinthian saints?

A. That one was going to supply and multiply their seed for sowing and increase the harvest of their righteousness. They were going to be enriched in every way so they could be generous. [9:10-11]

Q? How did the Corinthian saints glorify God?

A. They glorified God by the obedience of their confession of the gospel of Christ, and the generosity of their gift. [9:13]

Q? Why did the saints long for the Corinthian saints as they prayed for them?

A. They longed for them because of the exceedingly great grace of God that was upon the Corinthians. [9:14]

---

2 Corinthians 10

Q? What did Paul beg of the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul begged of them that when he was present with them, he would not have to be bold with self confidence. [10:2]

Q? For what occasion did Paul think he would have to be bold with self confidence?

A. Paul thought he would have to be bold with self confidence when he opposed those who supposed that Paul and his companions were living according to the flesh. [10:2]

Q? When Paul and his companions waged war, what kind of weapons did they not use?

A. Paul and his companions did not use fleshly weapons when they waged war. [10:4]

Q? What did the weapons that Paul used have the power to do?

A. The weapons Paul used had divine power to destroy strongholds. [10:4]

Q? For what reason did the Lord give Paul and his companions authority?

A. The Lord gave Paul and his companions authority so they could build up the Corinthian saints and not destroy them. [10:8]

Q? What were some people saying about Paul and his letters?

A. Some were saying Paul's letters were serious and powerful, but physically he was weak and his speech was not worth listening to. [10:10]

Q? What did Paul say to those who thought he was much different in person than his letters indidcated?

A. Paul said that what he said by letter when he was away would be the same as he would do when he was there with the Corinthians saints. [10:11]

Q? What did those who praised themselves do to show they had no insight?

A. They showed they had no insight because they measured themselves by one another and compared themselves with each other. [10:12]

Q? What were the limits of Paul's boasting?

A. Paul said their boasting would stay in the area that God had assigned to them, even reaching as far as the Corinthians. Paul said they would not boast about the labor of others, about the work being done in another's area. [10:13,15,16]

Q? Who is the one who is approved?

A. The one who is approved is the one the Lord commends. [10:18]

---

2 Corinthians 11

Q? Why did Paul have a godly jealousy for the Corinthian saints?

A. He was jealous for them because he had promised them in marriage to one husband, to present them as pure virgins for Christ. [11:2]

Q? What was Paul afraid of concerning the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul was afraid their thoughts might be led astray from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ. [11:3]

Q? What did the Corinthian saints tolerate?

A. They tolerated someone coming and proclaiming another Jesus, a different gospel, than the one Paul and his companions preached. [11:4]

Q? How did Paul preach the gospel to the Corinthians?

A. Paul preached the gospel freely to the Corinthians. [11:7]

Q? How did Paul “rob” other churches?

A. He “robbed” them by accepting support from them so he could serve the Corinthians. [11:8]

Q? How does Paul describe those who wish to be found equal to Paul and his companions in the things about which they boast?

A. Paul describes such people as false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves as apostles of Christ. [11:13]

Q? How does Satan disguise himself?

A. He disquises himself as an angel of light. [11:14]

Q? Why did Paul ask the Corinthian saints to receive him like a fool?

A. Paul asked them to receive him like a fool so he could boast a little. [11:16]

Q? With whom did Paul say the Corinthian saints gladly put up?

A. Paul said they gladly put up with fools, with someone who enslaved them, with someone who caused divisions among them, with someone who took advantage of them, with one who put on airs, or one who slapped them in the face. [11:19-20]

Q? What are Pauls boasts comparing himself to those who wish to be found equal with Paul in what they boasted about?

A. Paul boasted that he was a Hebrew, an Israelite and a descendant of Abraham just like those who claimed to be equal to Paul. Paul said he was more a servant of Christ than they were– in even more hard work, in far more prisons, in beatings beyond measure, in facing many dangers of death. [11:22-23]

Q? What were some of the specific dangers Paul endured?

A. Paul received five times the "forty lashes minus one" from the Jews. Three times he was beaten with rods. Once he was stoned. Three times he was shipwrecked. He spent a night and a day in the open sea. He was in danger from rivers, from robbers, from his own people, from the Gentiles. He was in danger in the city, in the wilderness, in the sea and in danger from false brothers. Paul was also in danger from the governor of Damascus. [11:24-26,32]

Q? According to Paul, what caused him to burn within?

A. One causing another to fall into sin made Paul burn within. [11:29]

Q? What did Paul say he would boast about, if he had to boast?

A. Paul said he would boast about what showed his weaknesses. [11:30]

---

2 Corinthians 12

Q? About what did Paul say he would now boast?

A. Paul said he would go on to boast about visions and revelations from the Lord. [12:1]

Q? What happened to the man in Christ fourteen years ago?

A. He was caught up into the third heaven. [12:2]

Q? Why does Paul say it would not be foolish if he boasted?

A. Paul said it would not be foolish for him to boast because he would be speaking the truth. [12:6]

Q? What happened to Paul to keep him from becoming puffed up?

A. Paul was given a thorn in the flesh, a messenger from Satan to harass him. [12:7]

Q? What did the Lord tell Paul after Paul asked the Lord to remove his thorn in the flesh?

A. The Lord told Paul, ”My grace is enough for you, for power is made perfect in weakness. [12:9]

Q? Why did Paul say it was preferable to boast about his weakness?

A. Paul said it was preferable so that the power of Christ might rest on him. [12:9]

Q? What was performed among the Corinthians with all patience?

A. Signs wonders and mighty deeds, the true signs of an apostle, were performed among them with all patience. [12:12]

Q? Why did Paul tell the Corinthians he would not be a burden to them?

A. Paul told them this to show them that he did not want what was theirs. He wanted them. [12:14]

Q? What did Paul say he would most gladly do for the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul said he would most gladly spend and be spent for their souls. [12:15]

Q? For what purpose did Paul say all these things to the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul said all these things to build up the Corinthian saints. [12:19]

Q? What was Paul afraid he might find when he went back to the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul was afraid that among them he would find arguments, jealousy, outbursts of anger, selfish ambition, gossip, pride, and disorder. [12:20]

Q? What was Paul afraid that God might do to him?

A. Paul was afraid God might humble Paul before the Corinthian saints. [12:21]

Q? For what reason does Paul think he might mourn for many of the Corinthian saints who previously sinned?

A. Paul was afraid they might not have repented of the impurity and sexual immorality and lustful indulgence which they previously practiced. [12:21]

---

2 Corinthians 13

Q? How many times had Paul already come to the Corinthian saints at the time 2 Corinthians was written?

A. Paul had already come to them twice at the time 2 Corinthians was written. [13:1-2]

Q? Why did Paul tell the Corinthians saints who had sinned and all the rest that if he came again he would not spare them?

A. Paul told them this because the Corinthian saints were seeking evidence that Christ was speaking through Paul. [13:3]

Q? For what did Paul tell the Corinthian saints to examine and test themselves?

A. Paul told them to examine and test themselves to see if they were in the faith. [13:5]

Q? What was Paul confident the Corinthian saints would find concerning Paul and his companions?

A. Paul was confident the Corinthian saints would find that they were not unapproved. [13:6]

Q? What did Paul say that he and his companions were not able to do?

A. Paul said they were not able to do anything against the truth. [13:8]

Q? Why did Paul write these things to the Corinthian saints while he was away from them?

A. Paul did this so that when he was with them, he would not have to act harshly toward them. [13:10]

Q? How did Paul want to use the authority the Lord gave him with regard to the Corinthian saints?

A. Paul wanted to use his authority to build up the Corinthian saints and not tear them down. [13:10]

Q? In concluding, what did Paul want the Corinthians to do?

A. Paul wanted them to rejoice, to work for restoration, to agree with one another, to live in peace, and to greet each other with a holy kiss. [13:11-12]

Q? What did Paul want all the Corinthian saints to have with them?

A. Paul wanted them all to have the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit. [13:14]

---

translationWords

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father"
- "Abraham" means, "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Canaanite, chaldea, Sarah, Sarai, Isaac)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

accuse, accusation, accuser

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: leprosy, leper, leprous, plague, suffer, suffering)

Bible References:

Waiting

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles, “Almighty God” or “God Almighty” or “Lord Almighty” or “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include, “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, master, sir, power, powers)

Bible References:

Waiting

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
-

(See: fulfill, true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Waiting

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh" has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include, "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh who looked like an angel."

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, rulers, rule, servant, slave, slavery)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-12]** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **[22-03]** The **angel** responded to Zechariah,“I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- **[23-06]** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- **[23-07]** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God…
- **[25-08]** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **[38-12]** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **[38-15]**”I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: wrath, fury)

Bible References:

Waiting

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, Saul, the twelve, the eleven)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in,“appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

Bible References:

Waiting

armor

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, peace, peaceful, salvation, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Rome, Paul, Ephesus, other)

Bible References:

Waiting

astray, go astray, led astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: disobey, disobedient, disobedience, shepherd, to shepherd)

Bible References:

Waiting

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, to command, commandment, obey, obedient, obedience, power, powers, ruler, rulers, rule)

Bible References:

Waiting

basket

Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Moses built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be, “floating container.”

(See also: ark, Moses, Nile River, River of Egypt, Noah)

Bible References:

Waiting

beg, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead, pleading, plea)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ’You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: faith, believer)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **[04-08]** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **[37-05]** Jesus replied, ”I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

believer

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say, “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means, “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be, “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: apostle, apostleship, believe, believe in, Christian, disciple)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-01]** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **[43-03]** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **[43-13]** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[46-01]** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **[46-09]** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus...It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”

- **[47-14]** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ’bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]**”I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, ”May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

Waiting

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say, “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

bold, boldly, boldness

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
- The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: confidence, confident, good news, gospel, redeem, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means, "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche)
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term, "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread, yeast, leaven)

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, the twelve, the eleven, God the Father, Heavenly Father, sister, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

burden

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: pray, prayer)

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink }

captive, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, Babylonian, exile, the Exile, prison, prisoner, imprison, seize)

Bible References:

Waiting

caught up, caught up with

Definition:

The term “caught up” often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase “caught up with” refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is “overtake.”
- The apostle Paul talked about being “caught up” to the third heaven. This could also be translated as “taken up.”
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be “caught up” together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, “my sins have caught up with me” could be translated as, “I am receiving the consequences of my sin” or “because of my sin I am suffering” or “my sin is causing me trouble.”

(see: miracle, wonder, sign, overtake, overtook, suffer, suffering, trouble, troubles, troubled)

Bible References:

Waiting

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
    - children of the light
    - children of obedience
    - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, promise, son, spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, the Son, Son, David, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, anoint, anointed)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- **[21-01]** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **[21-04]** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **[21-05]** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **[21-06]** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **[43-07]**"But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **[43-09]**"But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **[46-06]** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, assemble, believer, Christian)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-12]** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **[46-09]** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **[46-10]** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **[47-13]** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **[50-01]** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The tern “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: holy, holiness, unclean, sacrifice, offering)

Bible References:

Waiting

clothe, clothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

Waiting

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, encouragement, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord)

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, statutes, law, principle, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

Waiting

condemn, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as,“judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, judgment, punish, punishment)

Bible References:

Waiting

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

Waiting

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, believer, bold, boldly, boldness, faithful, faithfulness, hope, trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

confirm, confirmation

Definition:

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, swear, swear by, trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

Waiting

conscience

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

Bible References:

Waiting

Corinth, Corinthians

Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

- Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
- The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
- On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
- Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
- Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Apollos, Aquila, Paul, Priscilla, Timothy, :en:obe:other:titus] other)

Bible References:

Waiting

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, exhortation, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, wise, wisdom

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , New Covenant, promise)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]**”I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- **[07-10]** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: God, good news, gospel, world)

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, ”since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

crucify

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: cross, Rome, Roman)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-11]** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, ”**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **[39-12]** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus.played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **[40-01]** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **[40-04]** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **[43-06]** ”Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **[43-09]** ”You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, ”This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire, believer, Syria)

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, corruption, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, redemption, righteous, righteousness)

Bible References:

Waiting

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection, is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include, “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: biblical time: day, judgment day, Lord,resurrection, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, "to die" may be expressed as "to not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as "to pass away" in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "spiritual death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, "put to death" could also be translated as, "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, faith, life, live, living, alive, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]**"Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]**"Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]**"Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}

deliver, deliverer, deliverance

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as, "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See: judge, judgment, save, safe)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-03]** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **[16-16]** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **[16-17]** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, Abram, ancestor, father, forefather, Jacob, Israel, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-09]** ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **[04-09]** ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **[05-10]** ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **[17-07]** ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **[18-13]** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **[21-04]** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **[48-13]** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

disciple

Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the twelve.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: apostle, apostleship, believer, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, John (the Baptist), the twelve, the eleven)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[30-08]** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **[38-11]** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

- **[42-10]** Jesus said to his **disciples**, ”All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun, “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, disgraceful, honor, to honor)

Bible References:

Waiting

disobey, disobedient, disobedience

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, evil, wicked, wickedness, sin, sinful, sinner, obey, obedient)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-11]** God said to the man, ”You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **[13-07]** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[35-12]**”The older son said to his father, ’All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

divine

Definition:

The term “divine” refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include, “divine authority,” “divine judgment,” “divine nature,” “divine power,” and “divine glory.”
- In one passage in the Bible, the term “divine” is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “divine” could include, “God’s” or “from God” or “pertaining to God” or “characterized by God.”
- For example, “divine authority” could be translated as “God’s authority” or “authority that comes from God.”
- The phrase “divine glory” could be translated as “God’s glory” or “the glory that God has” or “glory that comes from God.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: authority, [:en:obe:kt:falsegod]], glory, glorious, God, judge, judgment, power, powers)

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: Metonymy
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, spiritual, world, worldly)

Bible References:

Waiting

encourage, encouragement

Definition:

The terms “encourage” and encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include, “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase, “give words of encouragement” means, “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: exhort, exhortation)

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be tranlsated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere, perseverance)

Bible References:

Waiting

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: free, freedom, liberty, righteous, righteousness, servant, slave, slavery)

Bible References:

Waiting

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include,“unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: forever, life, live, living, alive)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, ”Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, ”Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, ”Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Eve

Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, life, live, living, alive, Satan, devil, evil one)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-13]** Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **[02-02]** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- **[02-11]** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- **[21-01]** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- **[48-02]** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **[49-08]** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **[50-16]** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

exalt, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: praise, worship, glorify, boast, boastful, proud, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

Waiting

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: Abstract Nouns])
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, faithful, faithfulness)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, ”You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, ”Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, ”Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: faith, believe, believe in, belief)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **[14-12]** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **[15-13]** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **[17-09]** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **[35-12]**”The older son said to his father, ’All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!”
- **[49-17]** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **[50-04]** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Baal, Molech, Moloch, idol, idolatrous, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: fulfill, prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Waiting

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, heavenly Father, Father, son, son of, Son of God, the Son, Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished, awe, awesome, Lord, power, powers, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

fellowship

Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include, “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: Euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, everlasting, eternal, eternity, reign)

Bible References:

Waiting

forgive, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: guilt, guilty)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-10]** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **[13-15]** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **[17-13]** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **[29-01]** One day Peter asked Jesus, ”Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- **[29-08]** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, ”Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, adulterer, false god, god, prostitute, harlot, unfaithful)

Bible References:

Waiting

forsake, forsaken, forsook

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, bond, bound, enslave, in bondage, servant, slave, slavery,)

Bible References:

Waiting

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”.
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel,Jacob, Israel, Jew, Jewish)

Bible References:

Waiting

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: spirit, spiritual, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord)

Bible References:

Waiting

glorify

Definition:

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means “give glory.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as, “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: exalt, exaltation, glory, glorious, obey, obedient, obedience, praise)

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression,“give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: glorify)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[23-07]** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, ”**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **[25-06]** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **[37-01]** When Jesus heard this news, he said, ”This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **[37-08]** Jesus responded, ”Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, creation, Creator,false god, god, God the Father, Heavenly Father, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, idol, Son of God, the Son, Yahweh,)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **[01-15]God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **[05-03]**"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **[09-14]God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God.**
- **[22-07]** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **[24-09]** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **[25-07]**"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **[28-01]**"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **[49-09]** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **[50-16]** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

godly, godliness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “the godly” could be translated as, “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: Nominal Adjectives)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase, “in a godly manner” could be translated as, “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include, “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also honor, to honor, obey, obedient, obedience, righteous, righteousness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness, unrighteous, unrighteousness)

Bible References:

Waiting

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: father, forefather, God, heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus,Son of God, the Son, Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **[29-09]** Then Jesus said, ”This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **[37-09]** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, ”**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, ”It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- **[42-10]**”So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-08]**”Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- **[50-10]**”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**.”

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, holy, holiness, profit, profitable, righteous, righteousness,)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-04]** God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- **[01-11]** God planted…the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **[01-12]** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **[02-04]**"God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **[08-12]**"You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **[14-15]** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **[28-01]**"**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: kingdom, , sacrifice, offering, salvation)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[23-06]** The angel said, ”Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, ”God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **[45-10]** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **[46-10]** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **[47-01]** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **[47-13]** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **[50-01]** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **[50-02]** When Jesus was living on earth he said, ”My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

gossip

Definition:

The term “gossip” refers to talking to people about someone else’s personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone’s relationships with other people.

(See also: slander, slanderer)

Bible References:

Waiting

governor, govern, proconsul, government

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- Teh term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, powers, province, provincial, Rome, Roman, ruler, rulers, rule)

Bible References:

Waiting

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

groan

Definition:

The term “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. Usually a groan is made without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as, “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: cry, cry out)

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says, "Has not my hand made all these things?" (See: Metonymy)
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
    - To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
    - To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
    - To be "close at hand" means to be "nearby."
    - The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
    - The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as, "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, enemy, bless, blessed, blessing, captive, captivity, honor, to honor, power, powers)

Bible References:

Waiting

hard, hardness, harden

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions, “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as, “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include, “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as, “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as, “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as, “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby. See the link to “labor pains” below.

(See also: disobey, disobedient, disobedience, evil, wicked, wickedness, heart, labor pains, in labor, stiff-necked, stubborn)

Bible References:

Waiting

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: firstfruits, festival)

Bible References:

Waiting

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard, hardness, harden other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven.**
- **[14-11]** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **[23-07]** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, ”Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **[29-09]** Then Jesus said, ”This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **[37-09]** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **[42-11]** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Hebrew

Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The Old Testament was originally written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms in their original context in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jewish, Jewish Leaders)

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, consecratesanctify, sanctification, set apart)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]**”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]**”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]**”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]**”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, holiness, spirit, spiritual, God, Lord, God the Father, heavenly Father, Father, Son of God, the Son, Son, gift)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, ”God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]**”So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]**”And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, dishonorable, glory, glorious, glorify, praise other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. In can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, blessed, blessing, confidence, confident, good, goodness, obey, obedient, obedience, trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture)

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[34-10]** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: false god, foreign god, god, goddess, image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

image of God, image

Definition:

The term “image” refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase “image of God” is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings “in his image,” that is, “in his likeness.” This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God’s Son, is “the image of God,” that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity. God the Son has all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to Jesus, “image of God” could be translated as “exact likeness of God” or “same essence as God” or “same being as God.”
- When referring to human beings, “God created them in his image” could be translated with a phrase that means, “God created them to be like him” or “God created them with characteristics like himself.”

(See also: image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure, Son of God, the Son, Son, Son of God, the Son, Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include, “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term, “in Christ” could include, “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: Christ, Messiah, Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, believe, believe in, belief, faith)

Bible References:

Waiting

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as, “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression, “innocent blood” could be translated as, “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as, “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as, “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not accepting the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said, “I have betrayed innocent blood” he was saying, “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus, “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as, “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: guilt, guilty)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.

- **[40-04]** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, ”Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **[40-08]** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, ”Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”
-

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, Israel, kingdom of Israel, Judah, kingdom of Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, ”This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** ”Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include, “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as, “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy, covet)

Bible References:

Waiting

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Messiah, God, God the Father, Heavenly Father, high priest, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven, Mary, Savior, Son of God, the Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-04]** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **[23-02]**"Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **[24-07]** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **[25-08]Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- **[26-08]** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **[31-03]** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **[38-02]** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **[40-08]** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[42-11]** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **[50-17]Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Abram, Jacob, Israel, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel, Babylon, Babylonian, Jewish leaders, Jewish authorities, religious leaders)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-11]** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **[37-10]** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **[37-11]** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **[40-02]** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or with a phrase that means, "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." Metonymy)

(See also: rejoice)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**"The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **[34-04]**"The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broader sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broader sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broader sense of Judea (ex. Luke 1:5) could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense (ex. Luke 1:39) could be translated as “Judea Province” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of the land of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Galilean, Edom, Edomite, Idumea, Judah, Judah, kingdom of Judah, Samaria, Samaritan)

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, justice, justly, law, principle, law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: judge, judgment, righteous, righteousness, upright, uprightness)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

Waiting

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, reveal, revelation, understand, understanding, wise, wisdom)

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: hard, hardness, harden, labor pains, in labor)

Bible References:

Waiting

lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness” it means there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “lawless” could also be translated as, “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as, “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase, “man of lawlessness” could be translated as, “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, principle, lawful, lawfully, unlawful, law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament.
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will.
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament").

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws" since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as, "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include: "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions"
- The phrase, "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as, "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, instruction, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, lawfully, unlawful,Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.

- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.

- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.

- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.

- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"

- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

letter, epistle

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter are letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include, “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: encourage, encouragement, exhort, exhortation, teach, teaching, teacher, taught)

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person, as in, "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living, as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive as in, "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as, "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as, "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as, "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, "life" could be translated as "spiritual life" or "eternal life," depending on the context.
- The concept of "spiritual life" could also be translated as, "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as, "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, die, dead, everlasting, eternal, eternity)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-10]** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **[08-13]** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **[17-09]** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **[37-05]** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **[44-05]** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, holiness, righteous, righteousness, true, truth, come true)

Bible References:

Waiting

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure, perish, perishing, perishable)

Bible References:

Waiting

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, lord, master, sir, ruler, rulers, rule, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, die, dead, sacrifice, offering, save, safe, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, ”**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **[33-08]**”The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **[36-05]** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, ”This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **[39-10]**”Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **[47-01]** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **[48-01]** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **[49-03]** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **[49-04]** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **[49-07]** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **[49-09]** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **[49-13]** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

lust

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually refers to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term is used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could also be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or “to strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase “to lust after” could also be translated as “to wrongly desire” or “to think immorally about” or “to immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, idol, idolatrous)

Bible References:

Waiting

Macedonia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believer, Berea, faith, good news, gospel, Greece, Philippi, Thessalonica, Thessalonians)

Bible References:

Waiting

meek, meekness

Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: humble, humility)

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: compassion, compassionate, forgive, forgiveness

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, ”The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, ”No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ’God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

messenger

Facts:

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, archangel, apostle, apostleship, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

Waiting

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, wonder, sign, power, powers, strength, strengthen)

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, heart, soul)

Bible References:

Waiting

minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “minister” and “ministry” refer to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs. The term “minister” can also refer to a person who serves people in this way.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- In the New Testament, a “minister” of the gospel was someone who taught other people the message of salvation through faith in Jesus. Sometimes a minister is called a “servant.”
- The job of ministering to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, “to minister” could also be translated as “to serve” or “to care for” or “to meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as “to serve” or “to work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: serve, service, sacrifice, offering)

Bible References:

Waiting

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Egyptian, Miriam, Pharaoh, king of Egypt, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05] Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

new covenant

Definition:

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” is explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and they begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, like it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: atonement, atone, covenant, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, Moses, Son of God, the Son, Son)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-05]** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **[21-14]** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, ”Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”

- **[48-11]** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, to command, commandment, disobey, disobedient, disobedience, kingdom, law, principle)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]**”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

patient, patience

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, endurance, forgive, forgiveness, persevere, perseverance)

Bible References:

Waiting

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach nonJewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christian, Jewish Leaders, Rome)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[45-06]** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **[46-01] Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **[46-02]** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, ”**Saul**! **Saul**! Why do you persecute me?”
- **[46-05]** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **[46-06]** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **[46-09]** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.

- **[47-01]** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **[47-14] Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-06]** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **[15-12]** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **[16-03]** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **[21-13]** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **[48-14]** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, descended from, nation, tribe, world, worldly)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]**"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]**"So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel, people group, peoples, the people, a people)

Bible References:

Waiting

perfect

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” ir “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

Waiting

perish, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, die, dead, everlasting, eternal, eternity)

Bible References:

Waiting

persecute, persecution

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, Church, Jewish leaders, Jewish authorities, religious leaders, oppress, oppression, oppressor, Rome, Roman)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]** ”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **[46-02]** Saul heard someone say, ”Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, ”I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **[46-04]** But Ananias said, ”Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

plead, pleading, plea

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

Waiting

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- “To pledge” could be translate as, “to formally commit to” or “to strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: promise, oath, swear, swear by, vow)

Bible References:

Waiting

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy’ or ”live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, Canaanite, worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus,, miracle, wonder, sign,)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, ”The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, ”Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]**”Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, ”This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, ”**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: false god, foreign god, god, goddess, forgive, forgiveness, praise)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-05]** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **[13-12]** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **[19-08]** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **[21-07]** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **[38-11]** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **[43-13]** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

preach

Definition:

To speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: good news, gospel, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, John (the Baptist), kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-02]** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, "Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!"
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **[45-06]** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **[46-10]** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **[47-14]** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **[50-02]** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive, captivity)

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: preach)

Bible References:

Waiting

profit, profitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

refers to something good that is gained. Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

Waiting

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, swear, swear by, vow)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, ”I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]**”Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, humility, joy, joyful)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, ”I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

puffed up

Definition:

The term “puffed up” is a figurative expression that refers to being proud or arrogant. (See: Idiom)

- A person who is puffed up has an attitude of feeling superior to others.
- Paul taught that knowing a lot of information or having religious experiences can lead to being “puffed up” or proud.
- Other languages may have a similar idiom or a different one that expresses this meaning, such as “having a big head.”
- This could also be translated as, “very proud” or “disdainful of others” or “haughty” or “thinking oneself better than others.”

(See also: arrogant, proud, pride, prideful)

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, justice, justly, repent, repentance, righteous, righteousness, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- **[49-11]** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: atonement, atone, clean, cleanse, spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, appointed, exalt, exaltation)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-14]** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **[41-05]**"Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **[43-07]**"Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **[44-05]**" You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **[48-04]** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **[49-02]** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **[49-12]** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

reap, reaper

Definition:

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: Metaphor)
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”). (See link to “harvest” page for more translation suggestions.)

(See also: good news, gospel, harvest)

Bible References:

Waiting

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, lord, master, sir, save, safe)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, ”Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **[49-06]** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **[49-10]** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **[49-13]** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

reconcile, reconciliation

Definition:

The terms “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “making peace” between people who were formerly enemies with each other.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could also be translated as, “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: peace, peaceful, sacrifice, offering)

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: joy, joyful)

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, forgiveness, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, turn, turn away, turn back)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-02]** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **[17-13]** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **[19-18]** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **[24-02]** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, ”**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **[42-08]**“”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **[44-05]**”So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: good news, gospel, good news, gospel, dream, vision)

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward”kk refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish, punishment)

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or ”doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: good, goodness, holy, holiness, evil, wicked, wickedness, just, justice, justly, faithful, faithfulness)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

sacred

Definition:

Term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, often the term “sacred” is used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” or “sacred music” refer to music that is sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” refers to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performs to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

(See also: holy, holiness, consecrate, priest, priesthood))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, offering by fire, drink offering, false god, foreign god, god, goddess, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, priesthood, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- **[05-06]**"Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **[48-08]** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **[49-11]** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: save, safe, Savior)

Bible References:

Waiting

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, evil, wicked, wickedness, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven, tempt, temptation,)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-01]** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **[25-06]** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **[25-08]** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **[38-07]** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.

- **[48-04]** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **[49-15]** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]**"The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **[50-10]**"When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **[50-15]** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: cross, deliver, deliverer, deliverance, punish, punishment, salvation, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, ”Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** ”You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, ”What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, ”Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- **[49-12]** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **[49-13]** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

seal, to seal

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, tomb, grave, burial place)

Bible References:

Waiting

seed

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause…to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: appoint, appointed, redeem, redemption, redeemer)

Bible References:

Waiting

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and which moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous, but they deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before that they had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, cursed, deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive, disobey, disobedient, disobedience, Eden, garden of Eden, evil, wicked, wickedness, offspring, prey, to prey on, Satan, devil, evil one, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for "servant" can also mean "slave" and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obeying his master. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: commit, committed, commitment, enslave, in bondage, household, lord, master, sir, obey, obedient, obedience, righteous, righteousness, serve, service)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, ”O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- **[29-03]** ”Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ’Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- **[35-06]** ”All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, ”These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, ”A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”1#comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: covenant, law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, servant, slave, slavery)

Bible References:

Waiting

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also:holy, holiness, sanctify, sanctification, appoint, appointed)

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: false god, foreign god, god, goddess, humble, humility, humiliate, humiliation, Isaiah, repent, repentance, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
    - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
    - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
    - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
    - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
    - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
    - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as, "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, wonder, sign, apostle, apostleship, Christ, Messiah, covenant, circumcise, circumcision)

Bible References:

Waiting

Silas, Silvanus

Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to bring a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Antioch, Barnabas, Jerusalem, Paul, Saul, Philippi, prison, prisoner, imprison, testimony, testify)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[47-01]** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **[47-02]** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **[47-03]** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **[47-07]** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, “What must I do to be saved?”
- **[47-13]** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, disobedient, disobedience, evil, wicked, wickedness, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."

* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.

* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.

* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.

* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.

* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.

* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."

* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!

* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

slander, slanderer

Definition:

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: blasphemy, blaspheme)

Bible References:

Waiting

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and ”Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: Azariah, descendant, descended from, ancestor, father, forefather, firstborn, Son of God, the Son, Son, sons of God)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]**"Is this the **son** of Joseph?," they said.

Son of God, the Son, Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.
- Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term, “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using capital letters to begin “Son” will help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God”, especially when in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Messiah, ancestor, father, forefather, God, God the Father, heavenly Father, Father, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, [en:obe:kt:jesus]], son, son of, sons of God))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, ”The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- **[24-09]** God had told John, ”The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”?
- **[31-08]** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, ”Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- **[37-05]** Martha answered, ”Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”

- **[42-10]** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God**!"
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

soul

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means,“I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit, spiritual)

Bible References:

Waiting

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: evil, wicked, wickedness, good, goodness, reap, reaper)

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: angel, archangel, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, soul)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, ”It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, ”Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: Metaphor)
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, foreign god, god, goddess, idol, idolatrous, refuge, shelter, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

stumble

Definition:

The term “stumble” means to “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending sin, sinful, sinner, sinningon the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, persecute, persecution, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, stumbling block, stone of stumbling)

Bible References:

Waiting

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- In the New Testament, this word literally referred to a stick or other object that would trigger a trap or snare to snap shut on an animal that stumbled over it.
- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as, “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See: stumble, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Bible References:

Waiting

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-13]** God said, ”I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **[38-12]** Jesus prayed three times, ”My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **[42-03]** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **[42-07]** He (Jesus) said, ”It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **[44-05]**”Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **[46-04]** God said, ”I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, offering, Solomon, Babylon, Babylonian, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, tabernacle, courtyard, court Zion, Mount Zion house)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **[20-07]** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- **[20-13]** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **[25-04]** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’ ”
- **[40-07]** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: Synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Abram, Canaan, Canaanite, curtain, Paul, Saul, Sinai, Mount Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

Waiting

terror, terrify

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, enemy, fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh, judge, judgment, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt, temptation)

Bible References:

Waiting

testimony, testify

Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the testimony, ark of Yahweh, prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, witness, eyewitness)

Bible References:

Waiting

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra who became a believer in Christ as a result of Paul's ministry in his town. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul, providing guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appointed, believer, church, Church, Greek, Grecian, minister, ministry)

Bible References:

Waiting

Titus

Facts:

Titus was a Gentile who became a believer through the ministry of the apostle Paul. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, appointed, believer, church, Church, circumcise, circumcision, Crete, Cretan, elder, encourage, encouragement, instruct, instruction, minister, ministry)

Bible References:

Waiting

tremble

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean “be very afraid.”
- Sometimes the word “tremble” refers to the ground shaking because of a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, earthly, fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh, Lord)

Bible References:

Waiting

trespass

Definition:

To “trespass” means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin,” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to trespass against” could be translated as “to sin against” or “to break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, disobedient, disobedience, iniquity, sin, sinful, sinner, sinning, transgress, transgression)

Bible References:

Waiting

Troas

Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

- Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
- On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
- When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, preach, province, provincial, raise, rise, risen, arise, arose, Rome, Roman, scroll, Timothy)

Bible References:

Waiting

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or ” when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, affliction, persecute, persecution)

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, believe in, belief, faithful, faithfulness, fulfill, obey, obedient, obedience, prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, understand, understanding)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, ”That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, ”It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- **[31-08]** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **[39-10]** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, wh14#translationwordsen Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: idol, leprosy, leper, worship)

Bible References:

Waiting

unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include, “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believer, believe, believe in, belief, trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness)

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: clean, cleanse, defile, be defiled, demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit, holy, holiness, sacrifice, offering, unholy)

Bible References:

Waiting

ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: godly, godliness, evil, wicked, wickedness)

Bible References:

Waiting

veil

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb “to veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a more accurate term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as, “thin, cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

Waiting

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Messiah, Isaiah, Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus, Mary, the mother of Jesus)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of“walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, honor, to honor, [[:en:obe:other:obey])

Bible References:

Waiting

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

Waiting

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: obey, obedient, obedience, fruit, fruitful)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-05]** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **[18-01]** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **[23-09]** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

witness, eyewitness

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: guilt, guilty, judge, judgment, true, truth, testimony, testify)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, ”We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **[42-08]**”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **[43-07]**”We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or "Old Testament." These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone, it could be translated as "message" or "God's word" or "teachings," depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, word, Yahweh)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**.

- **[42-03]** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **[45-10]** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **[48-12]** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

word of truth

Definition:

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to God’s word or teaching.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could be translated as, “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: true, truth, come true, word, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture)

Bible References:

Waiting

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: fruit, fruitful, Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, miracle, wonder, sign)

Bible References:

Waiting

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, corruption, heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly,Rome, Roman, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness)

Bible References:

Waiting

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: honor, to honor)

Bible References:

Waiting

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, to command, commandment, law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture)

Bible References:

Waiting

wrong, mistreat, hurt

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means “to cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as, “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

Waiting

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

> from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain.* (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
    - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
    - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
    - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
    - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
    - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*…”
    - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house…”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
    - ”The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be”
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
    - ”He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them*.”

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
PASSIVE: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.
PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed,* and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

> No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
    - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
    - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
    - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
    - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of "not."

> It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *un*punished (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in "*un*happy," "*im*possible," and "use*less*." Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like "none," "nothing," and "no one," with adverbs like "nowhere," and with prepositions like "without."

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of "not."

> It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)
>
> And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *un*punished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." It emphasis the negative, and means "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So "She is not unattractive" means "She is attractive."
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So "She is not unattractive" means "She is a little bit attractive."
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So "She is not unattractive" means "She is very attractive."

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> so that they may *not* be *un*fruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means "so that they will be fruitful."

> All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.

- **For we do *not* have a high priest who can*not* feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
    - "For we have a hight priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses"
- **so that they may *not* be *un*fruitful** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
    - "so that they may be fruitful"

2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "certainly."

- **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *un*punished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
    - "Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished"
- **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- ”All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

> King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean "very old."

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word "and." Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

> King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was "very old."

> he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared "many false things to say."

> as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish–not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
    - ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years*.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
    - ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*.** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”
    - ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

> the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

> when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, ”Lord, *that I might receive my sight*.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox*. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinners in the assembly* of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
    - ”the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinners will not stand in the assembly* of the righteous”
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, ”Lord, *that I might receive my sight*.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
    - “when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, ‘What do you want me to do for you?’ He said, ‘Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.’ ”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox*.** (Psalm 29:6)
    - “He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.”

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

> they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

> where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
    - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
    - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
    - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
    - “whether we are alive or dead”

Exclamations

This answers the question: What are ways of translating exclamations?

In order to understand this, it would be good to read

- Sentence Types

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULB and UDB, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULB)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue: Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence shows strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah.” The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

> *Oh*, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

The word “Ah” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, ”*Ah*, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as “how” or “why,” even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God’s judgments are.

> *How* unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
2. Use a word word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

- **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULB)
    - ”You *are* such a worthless person!”
- **Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
    - ”Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God *are* so deep!”

2. Use an exclamation word from from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

- **They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”** (Mark 7:36 ULB)
    - “They were absolutely astonished, saying, ”*Wow*! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” ”
- **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
    - ”*Oh no*, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

- ***Ah*, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
    - Lord Yahweh, *what will happen to me*? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
    - *Help*, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

- **How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
    - ”His judgements are *so* unsearchable and his ways are *far* beyond discovering!”

4. Tell how the person felt.

- **Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "*Ah*, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
    - "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. *He was terrified* and said, "*Ah*, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Exclusive "We"

This answers the question: What is exclusive "we"?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but *not you*." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we". Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> *we* have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Inclusive "We"*

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information.**

Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, ”Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Go and Come

This answers the question: What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come." For example when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming", while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to translate the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring") in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring." For example when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming", while Spanish speakers say "I'm going."

Reason this is a translation issue: If the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving in.

Examples from the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "*Come*, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you *come* to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away and he wanted his servant to go to them.

> When you have *come* to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses and the people were in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them.

> Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to *come* to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Use the word “go”, “come”, “take” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the words that would be natural in your language.

- **But you will be free from my oath if you *come* to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
    - But you will be free from my oath if you *go* to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

- **When you have *come* to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
    - ”When you have *arrived* in the land that Yahweh your God gives you possess it and live in it,”
- **Yahweh said to Noah, ”*Come*, you and all your household, into the ark** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
    - “Yahweh said to Noah, ”*Enter*, you and all your household, into the ark”

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with "and" when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with "and" when one of the words actually describes the other.

> his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

> for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

"Words" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes "words."

> if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
    - ”For I will give you *wise words*”
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory*.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
    - ”that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*.”

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
    - ”For I will give you *words of wisdom*”
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory*.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
    - ”that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*.”

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
    - “if you are willingly obedient”

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”
    - “if you obey willingly”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like "every" or "all" to mean "many."

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

> Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus' disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like "every" or "all" to mean something like "very many," but not "*every* one." (Some people may not call generalization like this "hyperbole.")

> Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

> If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters–yes, and his own life also–he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word "hate" here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

> They found him, and they said to him, "*Everyone* is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

> But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> ... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

> ... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word "all" here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters–yes, and his own life also–he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
    - ”If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters–yes, and his own life also–he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
    - ”The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, "You are telling me a lie")
- Do not push the envelope (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme")
- This house is under water (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value")
- We are painting the town red (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

> “Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

> the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
    - “…Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
    - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
    - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
    - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
    - “I am crying my eyes out”

Inclusive "We"

This answers the question: What is inclusive "we"?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you."

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> ... the shepherds said one to each other, "Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us", they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A) or tablet/phone (see http://youtu.be/2K2gFlPMFVk).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Exclusive “We”*

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

> Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

> After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you*?" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophesy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> *Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;*
> *"the number of your days is so large!"* (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, *"Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you*?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
    - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, *"You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?*"
    - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, *"Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you*."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
    - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, *"Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you*?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

    - “After blindfolding him, they said to him, ”*You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!*” ”

- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

    - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen.* We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation*!”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

> All things were made through him. *Without him* was *not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

> Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
    - ”For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*.”
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
    - ”Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
    - ”Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter.”

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

> "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULB)
>
> I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

"Alpha and Omega" is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

"Heaven and earth" is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

> *From the rising of the sun to its setting*, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

> He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old.* (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
    - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting*, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
    - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
    - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
    - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Simile*

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be "dead." Examples in English are "table leg," "family tree," and "the price of food is going up." Examples in biblical languages are "hand" to mean "power," "face" to mean "presence," and "clothing" to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, "The price of petrol is going up" into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor "live." It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his "love") is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

   > Jesus said to them. *"I am the bread of life*. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst." (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is "I" and the image is "bread." Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

   > Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is "fruits". The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are "we" and "you" and the images are "clay and "potter." Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees*." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)
    - ”For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,”

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding “like” or “as.”

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - ”And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.”

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - “Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.”

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - ”And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”
    - ”And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
    - ”I will make you become *people who gather men*.”
    - ”Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*.”

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - ”Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - ”Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies.* May the God of my salvation be exalted.”
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - ”Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.”

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

> and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

> Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, ”*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
    - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, ”*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
    - ”The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
    - ”The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
    - ”who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies

Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> *The rich man* had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> *He will not be rich*; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

> ...*the rich* must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

"The meek" here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

- **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
    - ”The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*.”
- **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
    - ”Blessed are *people who are meek*”

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See Parallelism with the Same Meaning)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See Parallelism with the Same Meaning)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Parallelism with the Same Meaning*

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)
>
> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)
>
> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
    - “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
    - ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
    - “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

> Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

> *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a women would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

   - ***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
     - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not!* Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!"
   - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
     - "Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *None of you would do that!*"

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

   - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
     - "This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
   - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
     - *You should not insult God's high priest!*""
   - ***Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?*** (Job 3:11 ULB)
     - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!*"
   - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
     - "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

   - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
     - "You still rule the kingdom of Israel, *don't you*?"

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as" or "than."

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword.* (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for *as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky*, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightening. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
    - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
    - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
    - ”See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,”
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small *as a grain of mustard*,** (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
    - ”If you have faith even as small *as a tiny seed*”

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
    - “See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.”
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - “How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> *My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul", the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

> *the Pharisees* said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?" (Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- ***My soul* exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
    - ”*I* exalt the Lord.”
- ***the Pharisees* said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
    - ”*a representative of the Pharisees* said to him”
- **I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
    - ”I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural "you" for computer (see http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk) or tablet/phone (see http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal 'You' on the computer or on the tablet/phone. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

Translating Son and Father

This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, "*This is my beloved Son.* I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

> Jesus said, "I praise you *Father*, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the *Son* except the *Father*, and no one knows the *Father* except the *Son*" (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit*. (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

> no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

> Jesus said, "Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that *I had with you before the world was created.*" (John 17:1-5 ULB)

> The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

> I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human "father" and "son."

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

The following pages will help you with translating "Father" and "Son."

- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Son of God, the Son, Son

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

> His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, ”king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

> You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

> she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

> She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

> *Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)
>
> It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
    - ”You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, ”Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- "Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you."

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - "She named him *Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,'* and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - "she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*; "

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - "a young man named *Paul*"[1] The footnote would look like:
    - [1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - "But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;"

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - "a young man named *Saul*"
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) * "But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;" * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01|Acts 14:1 ULB)

- ”It came about in Iconium that *Paul*[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue” (Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - [1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10]See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11][1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

[53][Then every man went to his own house.... [11]She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”][2]

[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- **[14]He called the crowd again and said to them, ”Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” [16][1]**
    - **[1]Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear*.**

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- [14]He called the crowd again and said to them, ”Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” [16][1]
    - [1]Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear*.

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- [14]He called the crowd again and said to them, ”Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. [16]If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
    - [1]Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
    - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
    - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
    - ”your sins ... will be white like *milk*”
    - ”your sins ... will be white like *the moon*”

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
    - ”Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.”
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
    - ”We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish”

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
    - ”I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*”
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
    - ”We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish”

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
    - ”to him who made *the sun and the moon*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*